

the day-by-day method

ASSIMIL®

Japanese with Ease

Volume One

by Catherine Garnier
and Mori Toshiko

adapted for English-speakers
by **Lucas Klein** and **Kiril Savino**

Illustrated by J.-L. Goussé

ASSIMIL®

B.P. 25
94431 Chennevières-sur-Marne Cedex
FRANCE

© ASSIMIL 2007

ISBN 978-2-7005-0353-1

ASSiMiL[®] Method

Other Assimil titles available in handy book format with cassettes and CDs

"With Ease" series

Arabic with Ease
*Armenian with Ease**
Chinese with Ease vol. 1
Chinese with Ease vol. 2
Writing Chinese with Ease
Dutch with Ease
German with Ease
Hungarian with Ease
Italian with Ease
Japanese with Ease vol. 1
Japanese with Ease vol. 2
Writing Japanese with Ease
New French with Ease
Spanish with Ease

For travelling

Dutch from the Word Go!
French from the Word Go!
German from the Word Go!

Advanced language skills

Using French
Using Spanish

"Business"

Business French

For children

Sing your way to French!

** Available soon*

CONTENTS

Introduction..... V

Lessons 1 – 49

1	Hurry!	1
2	The Picasso Exhibition	5
3	Breakfast	9
4	At Customs	15
5	Shopping	21
6	The Tower of Tōkyō	25
7	Revision and Notes	31
8	The Cinema	37
9	In a Chinese Restaurant	43
10	Television	49
11	The Morning	55
12	In the Café	61
13	The Date	67
14	Revision and Notes	73
15	Introduction	77
16	Sunday	83
17	The Flea Market	89
18	At the bookstore	97
19	The Concert	103
20	No Smoking	111
21	Revision and Notes	119
22	At the Post-Office	123
23	Work	129
24	The Apartment	135
25	The Novel	141
26	Voyage to China	147
27	Arriving at the Airport	153

28 Revision and Notes	163
29 Birthday.....	169
30 Summer Vacation	179
31 On Sale.....	187
32 The Highway.....	197
33 Hachikō	205
34 At the Real Estate Agent's	213
35 Revision and Notes	221
36 Family Names	225
37 Hachikō (Part Two).....	233
38 The Form.....	241
39 Letter to the Parents	249
40 Visit to the Factory.....	257
41 Someone Eccentric.....	265
42 Revision and Notes	273
43 Science Fiction.....	277
44 The Hotel	285
45 The Bank.....	291
46 At the Doctor's.....	299
47 Music.....	309
48 Autumn Days	317
49 Revision and Notes	325
Appendix I	332
Appendix II	336

Introduction

First things first, don't be daunted by Japanese. Japanese is actually not hard to pronounce at all, and the differences in pronunciation are very small. Most Japanese sounds are a little shorter than they would be in English, sort of as if the vowels were clipped short. The Japanese often say that when speaking English they have to pretend they're chewing on a mouthful of butter to make all the mushy sounds we have. so you can imagine that for us, speaking Japanese just requires that we enunciate a little more, and pronounce our vowels a little shorter. Throughout the first 35 lessons, we will use both the standard romanization and our own pronunciation key, to help you get the hang of it.

There are only a couple points you'll have to pay attention to in the beginning. We will start with the consonants, which are the easiest:

- In Japanese there is neither an **r** nor an **l**, but a sound somewhat between the two. Most times we write the sound with an **r**, though some people have been known to use an **l**. However, the light, almost **l** sound in Japanese, while resembling an **r** in Spanish, might almost sound like a 'd' to an English speaker. To practice the Japanese **r**, try making an **r** sound, but just tap the roof of your mouth quickly with your tongue instead of holding it, and you should be pretty close.
- In our pronunciation keys, you'll often come across consonants with a little ' before them, like 't or 'k (represented with the double consonant [tt or kk] in the official romanization). This apostrophe means that you should hold this consonant, and pronounce it harder than you usually would, almost as if you stop just before you pronounce it. Imagine, for the 't sound, that you

put your tongue against your teeth, as you usually do to make a **t** sound, but hold it for a second, not letting any sound out. For example, pronounce ‘hot tomatoes’ to yourself. Notice how you pronounce the last **t** in ‘hot’ and the first **t** in ‘tomatoes’ as very nearly the same sound, but you pause a little. That’s exactly what the Japanese ‘**t**’ sounds like. Same thing with the ‘**k**’, as in ‘quick car’. Practice with these: **katta** (*kah'tah*), **ikka** (*ee'kah*), **rokka** (*ro'kah*).

And that’s it for the consonants. As for the vowels, they are not much more complicated. Here are a few things to watch out for:

- Some Japanese words have what we call ‘long’ vowels, meaning they are pronounced a little bit longer than usual. In English we call sounds like the **a** in ‘cape’ a ‘long vowel’, but don’t let that confuse you (in English, long vowels aren’t even long). We’ll use a ‘-’ to tell you that a vowel should be pronounced for two beats, as in *eeko-*, *sayo-nahrah*, and *ko-hee-* (in the official romanization, you will notice that these are spelled differently in different places. As you learn the Japanese writing system, you will see how and why, but there are only a few variations, nothing like ‘knot’, ‘not’, ‘naught’ in English, at least!)
- The **u** sound is one of the few in Japanese that ever changes. Most times, the **u** sound is like ‘oo’ in English, like in ‘fool’ or ‘moon’. Sometimes at the end of words, however, it is almost not pronounced at all. In those cases, we will signify that with an apostrophe, too. For instance, **desu** (*dés'*), just so you know it’s there but don’t have to pronounce it. Some other times (when it is written *ū* in the official Romanization), the **u** sound is pretty close to the French ‘u’.
- As we mentioned above, when pronouncing Japanese vowels, try to pronounce them very crisply and cleanly. Most of the time we English speakers pronounce ‘o’ as if it was written ‘ow’, rounding our lips at the end of the sound, but the Japanese never

do. The same is true for *e* —which in Japanese is pronounced like ‘eh’— and *i*, which is pronounced like ‘ee’. You will also come across the sound *ei*, written *é-* in the English pronunciation key. Try to pronounce it as the ‘ay’ in ‘say’, but barely pronounce the ‘y’ at the end of it. Note that *a* is pronounced as in ‘car’ (or ‘ah’) and not as in ‘bath’ or ‘sad.’ Here is a brief table explaining the conventions we chose for the English pronunciation key...

Japanese sound	English sound	as in...
a	<i>ah</i>	‘car’
e	<i>é</i>	‘eh’
ei	<i>é-</i>	‘play’ (without pronouncing the ‘y’ too much)
u	<i>oo</i>	‘smooth’
ū	<i>u-</i>	as the French ‘u’.
o	<i>o</i>	‘open’
i	<i>ee</i>	‘sweet’
ii	<i>ee-</i>	‘do you see it’
in	<i>een</i>	‘thirteen’
ai	<i>ahee</i> (in Japanese words) <i>ai</i> (in Chinese words)	‘trying’ ‘I’, ‘hi!’
oi	<i>oee</i>	‘boiled’ (try to really insist on the ‘i’ sound)
ui	<i>ooee</i>	‘buoy’
en	<i>en</i>	‘stain’

¹ To make this sound, just put your lips in the position they would be for blowing out a candle while saying ‘ee’. Try it! It works!

... and a few examples:

ookii (*o-kee-*) as in ‘oh-key’ (remember, hold both sounds a little long);

keigo (*ké-go*), try to pronounce it ‘ka(y)go’;

hai (*hai*) as 'hi!';
kaimasu (*kaheemahsoo*)...

And that's it. We do not need to talk about that anymore. With these few explanations, a minimal amount of attention, some of our exercises, and a bit of listening, you will be ready to pronounce any and all words in Japanese.

While we will not bore you with a long speech about intonation, since you should be able to pick most of it up from the recordings, we will give you one tip. The easiest way to make your intonation sound authentically Japanese is to try speaking without much intonation at all. Just let your sentences be flat, and then drop off a little at the end. The most important thing is to listen closely to the recordings, and let your own speech start to match theirs, and before you know it, you'll be sounding like a native!

One little reminder to keep in the back of your mind and not forget:
pay attention to long vowels!

Another great thing about Japanese is its **words**. Take **nouns**, for example. In Japanese, unlike English, you do not even have to worry about singular and plural. It may seem strange at first, but there is no need to worry about the difference between 'pencil' and 'pencils' in Japanese. たまご **tamago** can mean *the egg, an egg, the eggs, some eggs*, etc. じどうしゃ **jidōsha** (*jeedo-shah*) can be *the car, the cars, a car*, etc. When you count, you say 'one pencil, two pencil, three pencil,' and so on. Easy as pie!

Verbs! We wish we could tell you that the verbs were as easy as the nouns, and while they aren't, they're still nothing to get worried over. Don't fret over long lists of conjugations, because Japanese verbs don't change from speaker to speaker. たべます **tabemasu** (*tahbémahs*) means *I eat, you eat, s/he eats, we eat, they eat* and

sometimes even *you will eat, they will eat*. Japanese verbs have many forms, for negative, positive, past, present (though no future). As for irregular verbs, there are only three of them of note, and they're so common, you will remember them easily. You will see most of the common Japanese verbs in the first 15 lessons, and you will learn how to use them to express a myriad of ideas. Of course there are difficulties, such as using different verbs to refer to yourself and others, or sticking different suffixes onto verbs, but we'll deal with that in more detail later.

What will seem a little strange at first is that the words corresponding to our **adjectives** are actually more like verbs. That is, they change form depending on whether they're in the present, past, or negative, and that they are also used for all pronouns. *小さい* **chiisai** (*chee-sahee*) means *it's small*, and *小さくない* **chiisakunai** (*chee-sahkoonahē*) means *it's not small*, and *I'm not small, he's not small, you're not small* as well. All of this we will discuss little by little in the lessons to come.

But where you need to perform a bit of mental gymnastics right away is that the **word order** of Japanese sentences is pretty much completely opposite from our own. Verbs (or adjectives) always come at the end, and all complements (plus the subject, when there is one) come before it. A sentence like "there are bread and coffee on the table in the kitchen" would become "kitchen / of / table / on / bread / and / coffee / there are". It's nothing more than a habit, and soon you'll find that it's quite logical and not as complicated as it seems. But, you ask, if everything comes before the verb, then how do I know what the subject is, and what the objects are, or what they're objects for? Well the Japanese have a little system that's really quite ingenious. After each word they have a syllable (or sometimes two) to perform the task of straightening it all out, whether the word before the verb is the subject or whether it's one of its objects.

For example: パン を たべます
 pan **o** **tabemasu**
 (*pan* *o* *tahbémahs'*)

That **pan** means *bread*. The **tabemasu** means *to eat*. And the little **o** between them, that means that the **pan** is the object of **tabemasu**. The whole sentence would simply be *I* (or *you, he, she, we, or they*) *eat bread*.

And how about バス で いきます
 basu **de** **ikimasu**
 (*bahs' dé eekeemahs'*)

basu = *bus*, **ikimasu** = *to go*. The **de** in the middle means that **basu** is the method by which you are going (**ikimasu**). The sentence would be *I* (*you, etc.*) *go by bus*.

Since these little words (particles) have no real meaning by themselves, you will be given their function in square brackets, in the word-for-word translation.

パン を たべます I eat bread
pan o tabemasu (*bread* / [*object*] / *eat*)
(*pan o tahbémahs'*)

バス で いきます I go by bus
bas(u) de ikimasu (*bus* / [*means*] / *go*)
(*bahs' dé eekeemahs'*)

There are not, in fact, very many of these particles—ten, to be exact—and because we use them so often, you will surprise yourself after being comfortable with them in about twenty lessons. Obviously, there are still loads of words and particles, as well as constructions a bit more challenging, but we have 100 lessons here, so...

Now we will have to come across something that is rather hard. And that, for us, is **the writing**. And it is true—we cannot hide from it—the

Japanese writing system is difficult. Nevertheless, more than a hundred million people live, work, and play in Japanese—just think of how many Japanese products you use—and they communicate by reading and writing Japanese. So there is no reason not to get there yourself. The written language is an undeniable part of Japanese, and it is for this that we teach you to write. All Japanese texts are written with Japanese characters. Not knowing how to write will only condemn you, at an early date, to making no progress in the language.

What gives Japanese writing its complicated nature is that it employs, in fact, two systems at the same time. If you have had the chance to glance at a Japanese text before, and if you are rather observant, you should be able to spot the two systems pretty quickly. If you have not had the chance, take this little quiz right now. Look at the following passage for a couple minutes and find the elements of each system (answers on page XV)

明治の中ごろは、アメリカおよびイギリス、フランス、ドイツ、ロシアなど、ヨーロッパ諸国ともさかんに貿易をしました。さらに、学問、文学、美術、音楽などの面でもいろいろなえいきょうを受けました。

You may have already figured it out, but in any case, the answer is apparent: you have on the one hand very simple characters made up of one, two, or three strokes, while on the other hand you have more complex characters that seem rather like islands in an ocean. And so, *voilà*, you can already distinguish between the elements in the two systems.

The first, where the characters are more simple, is a system of syllabics, which means that each character corresponds to one syllable. We call these characters KANA. If we look at the answers to our sample, they are the characters in paragraphs (1) and (2). Just those at the beginning: の = no, こ = go, ろ = ro, お = o, よ = yo, ひ = bi, な = na, ど = do, と = to, も = mo, さ = sa, か = ka, etc.

But to complicate matters (and which you have probably already noticed), there are two different kinds of KANA. One kind is used in writing words native to Japanese. These are called HIRAGANA. They are found in list (1) of the answers on page XV. These are the more rounded characters.

The others are used to write words of foreign origin, usually proper names of people or places, as well as common names (the vast majority of which come from American English). These are called KATAKANA, group (2) on the answer page.

Both kinds of KANA are made up of a limited number of characters: 46 for each, corresponding to the combination of almost all existent vowels (5) and consonants (9). (You will find pronunciation tables on pages 333 and 334).

Some HIRAGANA come up regularly, especially those at the end of verbs, and of course particles (those little particles that indicate word function, which we spoke about earlier). You will learn these quickly. And by the time the passive learning section of our course is completed, after Lesson 49, you will have no trouble at all remembering and learning how to write them.

The more complex character set is a different matter. This is the hard part for nearly all those who study Japanese. As much as you need to know these characters, you must also know that “slow and steady wins the race”, especially the race against despair before even beginning!

This second system is called KANJI 漢字, which means, simply, ‘Chinese’ (漢) ‘characters’ (字) that the Japanese borrowed, as the name indicates, from China. These are often called *ideograms*, which means that each character responds to a **meaning**. So the character 人 means *person*. Used by the Chinese, they have one pronunciation, and used by the Japanese, they have another. Used by Koreans, still

another. And if we want to amuse ourselves by writing English with these ideograms, we can write 人 and say *person*.

There is, however, a fundamental difference between the KANA and KANJI systems. The Japanese word *fire* is pronounced **hi** (that's more like *hee* than an English 'hi'). We can write it in *hiragana* as ひ, but this can also be used in any word that uses the syllable **hi**, just as the letter 'a' in English can be used in any number of words as well as stand alone. If we want to use *kanji*, however, we write 火 which is also pronounced **hi**, but can mean nothing except *fire*: 火 = *fire*.

All these explanations lead to one central point. To be careful, we will hang on to this for a moment. To repeat: an ideogram corresponds to a **meaning**. Let's take 煙 which means *smoke* (and where there is smoke there is fire, so we can see the character for *fire*, 火, written in the character for *smoke*. That should help, doesn't it?). The Japanese, before writing their language with Chinese characters, certainly had a way to say *smoke*, which was **kemuri**. But what happened when the Japanese borrowed characters from China? They found the character 煙 and, as it meant *smoke*, used it for writing their **kemuri**. And wherever you see that character, you can pronounce it **kemuri**.

But unfortunately for us, the Japanese had another idea, which was to take not only the writing, but also the pronunciation from the Chinese. In China, the character was pronounced something like **en**, and the Japanese kept this pronunciation for use in compound words. For example, the compound word 煙害 meaning *smoke pollution*, pronounced **engai**, sounds nothing like **kemuri**. In other words, each Chinese character in Japanese has at least two pronunciations. One is the original Japanese word, and the other is an adaptation of the ancient Chinese pronunciation. Sometimes certain characters will have even more pronunciations for each category.

Examples to be discussed in our text:

国 *country*; Japanese: *kuni* (*koonē*); ancient Chinese, **altered by the Japanese: koku.**

音 *sound*; Japanese: *oto* or *ne* (*né*); ancient Chinese: **on** or **in.**

中 *middle*; Japanese: *naka*; ancient Chinese: **chū** or **jū** (*chu-* or *ju-*).

Ugh! Don't panic. You don't have to worry about all of this right away. Simply use *kanji* characters where they need to be used, as with all Japanese writing. At the beginning—and throughout the passive learning stage—it will be best just to look at these characters and try little by little to learn only the most common. With this advice you'll be fully prepared to attack the first lesson.

The first stage of your studies with *Japanese with Ease* is **passive**. Until Lesson 49, you will listen and **read aloud**, do your exercises, and have fun by trying to learn some *kana* and Chinese characters. If you want to amaze your friends right away, you can learn to write a few *kana* (you'll find the tables you need on pages 333 and 334), but it isn't mandatory. It will be enough at the beginning to understand, allowing yourself to be immersed in the language.

It is not until Lesson 50 that you will enter the **active** phase of your studies, which is to say that in addition to the daily lesson, you will go back to a lesson you have already seen, and which we will alert you to translate from English into Japanese. As you will already be able to understand a good deal of Japanese, with ear and eye already accustomed to the language, you will be able to make sentences naturally, without too much extra effort, just like a child beginning to speak.

The lessons are packed in groups of seven, with the seventh reviewing what you have studied during the week, helping you put things in order. You will be impressed, each time, with the progress you have made.

What is essential is that you study and review regularly. Better a little work often than an overload of work infrequently. The most challenging, keep in mind, are the first three weeks, because you will be “learning the ropes”. But it is like walking: if you go too fast you will run out of breath, but if you don’t get a good rhythm you will wear yourself out for no reason. So apply yourself from the beginning and pace yourself. And remember, it is with a good attitude and without wasting energy that you will best learn the Japanese language.

ANSWERS

System 1

(1) の ご ろ お よ び な ど と も
さ か ん に を し ま た ら で
い え きょう け

(2) ア メ リ カ イ ギ リ ス フ ラ
ン ド ツ ロ シ ョ ー ロ パ

System 2

明 治 中 諸 国 貿 易
学 問 文 美 術 音 楽 面 受

The language recordings, on cassette or CD, accompanying this series contain a recording of the dialogue and practice phrases of each lesson. For the first six lessons, the dialogue has been recorded twice. The first time, each sentence is repeated very slowly so that you can distinguish each syllable. The second time the text is read more quickly. Japanese pronunciation, as you have read in the introduction, should pose few problems for you. After Lesson 8, you will find the words in the text with ease; it won't be necessary to repeat the sentences twice!

1 ^{だい いっ か} 第一課 da i i k ka ① (*dai ee'kah*)

1 - ^{はや} 早く。②
ha ya ku.
(*hahyahkoo*)

2 行きましょう。③
i ki ma shō.
(*eekeemahsho-*)

3 - わかりました。
wa ka ri mashi ta.
(*wahkahreemahshtah*)

4 どこへ。
do ko e.
(*doko é*)

5 - あそこへ。
a so ko e.
(*ahsoko é*)

6 - ^{あつ}暑い ですね
a tsu i de su ne.
(*ahtsooee des' né*)

7 - そう ですね。④
sō de su ne.
(*so- des' né*)

□

Notes

- ① The first **kanji** you see here is a numeral indication, placed before the number, that means something like the English *-th*, as in, "4th, 5th, 6th..." Of course, it also means *-st*, *-nd*, and *-rd*, as in "1st, 2nd, 3rd", but for simplification, we notate it here as *-th*.
- ② Look closely at the Chinese character used in this sentence. Above it you'll find small **hiragana** characters. It's common for Japanese to indicate character pronunciation this way. Whenever a Chinese character is used in this textbook, it will have two different pronunciation guides, one in little **hiragana** ▶

Lesson One (-th / one / lesson)

1

- 1 – Hurry!
- 2 – Let's go.
- 3 – I understand.
- 4 – Where?
(where / [destination])
- 5 – Over there.
(there / [destination])
- 6 – It's hot, isn't it!
(hot / it is / [agreement])
- 7 – It is, isn't it!
(so / it is / [agreement])

ふりがな

- ▶ above the character, called **furigana**, 草, and one with the official Japanese romanization, **haya**. Little by little, you'll find yourself getting used to not looking at the romanization at all!
- ③ A small note on writing. Words in the Chinese language don't change form, but Japanese verbs do vary depending on the context. Here we have a verb form **ikimashō** (*eekeemahsho-*), but we can also find **iku**, **ikanai** (*EEKOO, eekahnah'ee*), etc. So for verbs, we keep the Chinese character for the part of the verb that doesn't change, in this example the *i*, and write the rest in **hiragana**: 行きましょう **i ki ma shō** (*eekeemahsho-*).
- ④ Japanese particularly like short words for the ends of phrases (we call them final particles). They lend a sense of closure to the sentence, and a sense of tone. In English, for instance, our voices rise toward the end of questions, and drop toward the end of statements. In Japanese the tone stays relatively flat, so they need these sentence-enders to indicate whether they're asking a question, stating a fact, or confirming something. Here, this **ね** indicates that the speaker is looking for understanding and agreement from the listener. 暑い ですね **a tsu i de su ne** (*ahtsooe des' né*) = *it's hot, don't you think?* (or *it's hot, isn't it.*). そう ですね **sō de su ne** (*so- des' né*) = *yes (it is, isn't it.)*. We refer as an 'agreement' in the accompanying translation, as the speaker is looking for confirmation, or agreement, from the listener.

1

れん しゅう

練習 renshū (ren shu-) – Practice

Exercise 1

- ① ^{はや}早く。
hayaku.
(hahyahkoo)
- ② ^い行きましょう。
ikimashō.
(eekeemahsho-)
- ③ ^{はや}早く ^い行きましょう。
hayaku ikimashō.
(hahyahkoo eekeemahsho-)
- ④ わかりました。
wakarimashita.
(wahkahreemahshtah)

Exercise 2

... ^{ことば}に ^い言葉 を 入れ なさい
... ni kotoba o i re na sa i
(nee kotobah o eeré nahsai)

Fill in the blanks with the missing words

(. . . / [place] / word / [object] / enter)

- ① Where? There.
doko e? e
- ② It's hot!
atsui desu . .

Answers to Exercise 1

1

① Hurry ② Let's go. ③ Let's go quickly. ④ I understand.



③ Let's go.
iki

Answers to Exercise 2

① - asoko -. ② - ne. ③ - mashō.

2 ^{だい に か} 第二課 da i ni ka (*dai nee kah*)

^{てん}
ピカソ展
pi ka so te n
(*peekahso ten*)

- 1 - ^み見ました か。①
mi ma shi ta ka.
(*meemahshtah kah*)
- 2 - ^{なに}何を。
na ni o.
(*nanee o*)
- 3 - ピカソ ^{てん}展。②
pi ka so te n.
(*peekahso ten*)
- 4 - まだ です。
ma da de su.
(*mahdah des'*)
- 5 - いい です よ。③
i i de su yo.
(*ee-des'yo*)

Notes

- ① We will come across this か ka very often. An accurate translation is impossible, but it isn't truly necessary. It is simply an interrogative particle, meaning that the sentence that precedes it, is a question. Any sentence can become a question with this particle, changing nothing of the original word order. ▶

The Picasso Exhibition

(Picasso / exhibition)

- 1 – Did you see it?
(have seen / [question])
- 2 – What?
(what / [object])
- 3 – The Picasso exhibition.
(Picasso – exhibition)
- 4 – Not yet.
(not yet / it is)
- 5 – It's really good!
(really good / it is / [engagement])



- ▶ ② The last **hiragana** of this sentence, **ん**, is the only exception to the syllabic rule. It is not transcribed as a full syllable, but instead as a final **n** to end a separate syllable.
- ③ **よ** **yo** is another final particle. In Lesson 1 you learned about **ね** **ne**. Here, **よ** **yo** has the opposite meaning. That is, 'what I am saying is my own opinion, and it only has to do with me'. **いいです よ** **ii desu yo** = *(I personally think) it's good*. We refer to this above as 'engagement', as the speaker is not asking for confirmation or agreement, and is simply stating a fact or opinion.

2 6- そう です か。 ④
sō de su ka.
(so- des' kah)

7 あした 行きます。
a shita i ki masu.
(ahshtah eekeemahs')

□

Notes

- ④ We already discussed long vowels in the introduction. Here's a simple example: sō. In Japanese, it's written そう. Here we come across a rare convention of writing that we have to remember: ▶

れん しゅう
練習 rensū (ren shu-)

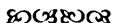
Exercise 1

- ① 見ました か。
mimashita ka.
(meemahshtah kah)
- ② まだ 見ません。
mada mimasen.
(mahdah meemahsen)
- ③ 見ました か。
mimashita ka.
(meemahshtah kah)
- ④ 見ました。
mimashita.
(meemahshtah)

6 – Really?
(so / it is / [question])

7 I'll go tomorrow.
(tomorrow / go)

2



- ▶ two hiragana, そ and う, pronounced as *u* when it's alone. But together そう is pronounced like *so-*, which isn't really any more difficult or confusing than any English spelling rules.

⑤ そう ですか。
sō desu ka.
(so-des' kah)

Answers to Exercise 1

① Did you see it? ② Not yet. ③ Did you see it? ④ Yes. ⑤ Oh, really?

3 Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば}言葉 を ^い入れ なさい
... ni kotoba o i re na sa i
(nee kotobah o eeré nahsai)

Fill in the blanks with the missing words
(... / [place] / word / [object] / enter)

- ① I saw.
mimashi ..
- ② Did you see [it]?
mimashita ..

3 ^{だいさんか}第三課 da i sa n ka (dai san kah)

^{ちょうしょく}
朝食
chō sho ku
(cho- shokoo)

- 1 - おはよう ございます。 ①②
o ha yō go za i masu.
(ohahyo- gozaheemahs')
- 2 - おはよう ございます。 ①②
o ha yō go za i masu.
(ohahyo- gozaheemahs')

Notes

- ① There are many ways of saying *hello* in Japanese. This formula is used when you meet someone for the first time of the day, usually in the morning. ▶

- ③ That's great!
ii desu . .
- ④ Is it good?
ii desu . .

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - ta. ② - ka. ③ - yo. ④ - ka.

Lesson Three *(-th / three / lesson)* 3

Breakfast *(morning meal)*

- 1 - Good Morning.
2 - Good Morning.

朝食

- ▶ ② よう cf. Lesson 2, note 4. よ = yo; う = u, but the two together make よう yō (yo-), with a long o.

- 3- パン を 食べます か。
 pa n o ta be ma su ka.
 (pan o tahbémahs' kah)
- 4- 食べます。③④
 ta be ma su.
 (tahbémahs')
- 5- コーヒー を 飲みます か。
 kō hī o no mi ma su ka.
 (ko-hee- o nomeemahs' kah)
- 6- 飲みます。
 no mi ma su.
 (nomeemahs')
- 7- ビール を 飲みます か。
 bī ru o no mi ma su ka.
 (bee-roo o nomeemahs' kah)
- 8- 飲みません。
 no mi ma se n.
 (nomeemahsen)
- 9- りんご を 食べます か。
 ri n go o ta be ma su ka.
 (ringo o tahbémahs' kah)
- 10- 食べません。
 ta be ma se n.
 (tahbémahsen)

Notes

- ③ What we have just said in note 1 is only applicable in **hiragana**. For **katakana** we have a different system, marking long vowels with a line: コ = ko, コー = kō, ヒ = hi, ヒー = hī, ビ = bi, ビー = bī.

- 3 – Would you like some bread?
(bread / [object] / eat / [question])
- 4 – Yes.
(eat)
- 5 – Would you like some coffee?
(coffee / [object] / drink / [question])
- 6 – Yes.
(drink)
- 7 – Would you like some beer?
(beer / [object] / drink / [question])
- 8 – No.
(not drink)
- 9 – Would you like an apple?
(apple / [object] / eat / [question])
- 10 – No.
(not eat)



- ▶ ④ In Japanese, the usual way of saying *yes* is to repeat the main verb of the sentence. To say *no*, simply negate the main verb of the sentence.

11 - それでは 卵^{たまご} を 食^たべますか。
 so re de wa ta ma go o ta be ma su ka.
 (sorédéwah tahmahgo o tahbémahs' kah)

12 - 食^たべます。
 ta be masu.
 (tahbémahs')

□

Don't forget, you don't have to try to memorize the kana or the Chinese characters right now, just focus on identifying them and 'how they work'. The habit of seeing them will help you remember them. And this will come earlier than you imagine.

れん しゅう
 練習 rensū (ren shu-)

Exercise 1

① コーヒー を 飲^のみますか。
 kōhī o nomimasu ka.
 (ko-hee- o nomeemahs' kah)

② 飲^のみます。
 nomimasu.
 (nomeemahs')

③ コーヒー を 飲^のみます。
 kōhī o nomimasu.
 (ko-hee- o nomeemahs')

11 – Well then would you like some eggs?

(so / egg / [object] / eat / [question])

12 – Yes.

(eat)

3

④ ビール を 飲^のみます か。

bīru o nomimasu ka.

(bee-roo o nomeemahs' kah)

⑤ 飲^のみません。

nomimasen.

(nomeemahsen)

Answers to Exercise 1

① Do you want coffee? ② Yes. ③ I'll drink coffee. ④ Do you drink beer? ⑤ No.

4 Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば}言葉 を ^い入れ なさい
... ni kotoba o i re na sa i
(nee kotobah o eeré nahsai)

Fill in the blanks with the missing words
(... / [place] / word / [object] / enter)

- ① I eat eggs.
tamago . tabemasu
- ② Do you want bread?
pan o tabemasu . .

4 ^{だいよんか}第四課 da i yo n ka (dai yon kah)

^{ぜい かん}
税関
ze i ka n
(zeikan)

- 1 - カメラ を ^も持っていますか。①
ka me ra o mo t te i ma su ka.
(kahmérah o mo'té eemahs' kah)
- 2 - はい、^も持っています。
ha i. mo t te i ma su.
(hai mo'té eemahs')
- 3 - どこ に あります か。
do ko ni a ri ma su ka.
(doko nee ahreemahs' kah)

- ③ Yes.
tabe
- ④ Do you drink coffee?
kō hī o nomi ka
- ⑤ No.
nomi

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - o -. ② - ka. ③ - masu. ④ - masu -. ⑤ - masen.

Lesson Four (-th / four / lesson) 4

At Customs (customs)

- 1 - Do you have a camera ?
(camera / [object] / possess / [question])
- 2 - Yes, I do.
(yes / possess)
- 3 - Where is it?
(where / [place] / exist / [question])

㊦㊧㊨㊩

Notes

- ① Take a good look at the word 持つて ^も motte (*mo'té*). This is where we find the double tt sound. In written Japanese, this doubling is represented by the little sign つ. It's the same sign used to point out the double kk in the title of Lesson 1: だいいっか *dai ikka* (*dai ee'kah*). And look at item 11: けっこう *kekkō* (*ke'ko-*). And now . . . cheat a little and sneak a peak at Lesson 6!

- 4- トランク の ^{なか}中 に あります。
 to ra n ku no na ka ni a ri masu.
 (torankoo no nahkah nee ahreemahs')
- 5- トランク の ^{なか}中 に ^{なに}何が
 to ra n ku no na ka ni na ni ga
 (torankoo no nahkah nee nanee gah
 あります か。
 a ri ma su ka.
 ahreemahs' kah)
- 6- 洋服 と ^{ほん}本 が あります。
 yō fu ku to ho n ga a ri masu.
 (yo- fookoo to hon gah ahreemahs')
- 7- それ だけ です か。
 so re da ke de su ka.
 (soré dahké dés' kah)
- 8- はい、そうです。
 ha i, sō de su.
 (hai so- dés')
- 9- お ^{さけ}酒 ?
 o sa ke?
 (o sahké)
- 10- ありません。
 a ri ma se n.
 (ahreemahsen)
- 11- はい、けっこう です。
 ha i, ke k kō de su.
 (hai ke'ko- dés')

□

- 4 – It's in my suitcase (trunk).
(suitcase / [relation] / inside / [place] / exist)
- 5 – What is in your suitcase (trunk)?
(suitcase / [relation] / inside / [place] / what / [subject] / exist / [question])
- 6 – There are clothes and books.
(clothes / and / books / [subject] / exist)
- 7 – That's all?
(that / only / it is / [question])
- 8 – Yes, that's all.
(yes / so / it is)
- 9 – Any alcohol?
([familiarity]-alcohol)
- 10 – I don't have any.
(not exist)
- 11 – Okay, great.
(yes / perfect / it is)

おもしろ



練習 **renshū** (*ren shu-*)**Exercise 1**

- ① 洋服 ^{ようふく} を 持 ^も っ て います か。
 yōfuku o motte imasu ka.
 (yo-fookoo o mo'té eemahs' kah)
- ② はい、持 ^も っ て います。
 hai, motte imasu.
 (hai mo'té eemahs')
- ③ どこ に あります か。
 doko ni arimasu ka.
 (doko nee ahreemahs' kah)

Exercise 2

... に 言 ^{こと} 葉 ^ば を 入 ^い れ な さい
 ... ni kotoba o i re na sa i
 (nee kotobah o eeré nahsai)

Fill in the blanks with the missing words

(... / [place] / word / [object] / enter)

- ① Do you have any books?
 hon o motte imasu . .
- ② I have a suitcase.
 toranku . motte imasu
- ③ Where is it?
 ni arimasu ka

- ④ あそこ に あります。
asoko ni arimasu.
(ahsoko nee ahreemahs')

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Do you have any clothes? ② Yes, I do. ③ Where are they?
④ They are over there.

- ④ It's over there.
asoko ni ari
⑤ Do you have a camera?
kamera . motte imasu ka
⑥ No.
motte ima . . .

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - ka. ② - o -. ③ doko -. ④ - masu. ⑤ - o -. ⑥ - sen.

5 ^{だいご} ^か 第五課 **da i go ka** (*dai go kah*)

^{かいもの}
買物

ka i mo no
(*kaheemono*)

- 1- どこ ^い へ 行きます か。
do ko e i ki ma su ka.
(*doko é eekeemahs' kah*)
- 2- デパート ^い へ 行きます。①
de pā to e i ki ma su.
(*dépah-to é eekeemahs'*)
- 3- ^{いっしょ} 一緒に 行きます。②
i s sho ni i ki ma su.
(*ee'sho- nee eekeemahs'*)
- 4- ^{なに} 何 ^か を 買います か。
na ni o ka i ma su ka.
(*nanee o kaheemahs' kah*)
- 5- ^{くつ} 靴 ^{した} 下 ^か を 買 います。
ku tsu shi ta o ka i ma su.
(*kootsooshtah o kaheemahs'*)
- 6- ^つ 着きました。
tsu ki ma shi ta.
(*tsookeemahshtah*)

Notes

- ① パー **pā** (*pa-*). Remember (Lesson 3, note 3), the dash is there simply because the a is long, and the word is in **katakana**. ▶

Shopping

(shopping)

- 1 – Where are you going?
(where / [destination] / go / [question])
- 2 – I'm going to the department store.
(department store / [destination] / go)
- 3 – I'll go with you.
(together / [adverbial] / go)
- 4 – What are you buying?
(what / [object] / buy / [question])
- 5 – I'm buying socks.
(socks / [object] / buy)
- 6 – Here we are!
(be arrived)

どこへ行きますか。



- ▶ ② Again we meet the little つ, this time not to indicate a **tt** or **kk**, but for the **shsh**: いっしょ **ishsho** (ee'sho-). Notice, too, that the last **hiragana** is written smaller, too: よ. We saw this before, in lesson 2, but in normal size: よ = yo. There was no way to write the syllables beginning with **sh** out of the 46 **kana**, except for **shi**. So the Japanese developed a writing convention of following **shi** (し) with a small yo (よ) and getting しょ **sho**.

- 7 ^{はい} 入りましょう。③
 ha i ri ma shō.
 (haheereemahsho-)
- 8- ここに ^{くつした} 靴下 が あります。
 ko ko ni ku tsu shi ta ga a ri masu.
 (koko nee kootsooshtah gah ahreemahs')
- 9- でも ^{たか} 高い ですね。
 de mo ta ka i de su ne.
 (démo tahkai dès' né)
- 10- そう ですね。
 sō de su ne.
 (so- dés' né)
- 11 やめます。
 ya me ma su.
 (yahmémahs')

□

れん しゅう

練習 renshū (ren shu-)

Exercise 1

- ① あそこ ^{くつした} に 靴下 が あります。
 asoko ni kutsushita ga arimasu.
 (ahsoko nee kootsooshtah gah ahreemahs')
- ② ここに トランク が あります。
 koko ni toranku ga arimasu.
 (koko nee torankoo gah ahreemahs')
- ③ どこ ^い へ 行きます か。
 doko e ikimasu ka.
 (doko é eekeemahs' kah)

- 7 Let's go in.
 8 – Here are the socks.
(here / [place] / socks / [subject] / exist)
 9 – But they're expensive.
(but / be expensive / it is / [agreement])
 10 – Yes, they are.
(so / it is / [agreement])
 11 I'll pass!
(quit)



Notes

- ③ 入^いりましょう *hairimashō (hairemahsho-)*. Remind you of something? Look back to Lesson 1: 行^いきましょ *ikimashō (eekemahsho-)*. Look at the end of these words: しょう. Here we have a **shi** (し), followed by a small **yo** (よ), and then an **u** (う). Coming after the note above, we know that しょ, **shi** plus **yo**, equals **shō**. If we add the う **u**, it's only because the **o** in **shō** is long: しょう = **shō**.

- ④ 洋^{よう}服^{ふく} を 買^かいます。
yōfuku o kaimasu.
(yo-fookoo o kaheemahs')
- ⑤ どこ に あります か。
doko ni arimasu ka.
(doko nee ahreemahs' kah)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① There are the socks. ② Here are the suitcases. ③ Where are you going? ④ I'm buying clothes. ⑤ Where are they?

5 Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば} 言葉 を ^い 入れ なさい
... ni kotoba o i re na sa i
(nee kotobah o eeré nahsai)

Fill in the blanks with the missing words
(... / [place] / word / [object] / enter)

- ① What are you buying?
nani . kaimasu ka
- ② What are you eating?
... o tabemasu ka

6 ^{だい ろっ か} 第六課 da i ro k ka (dai ro'kah)

^{とう きょう} 東京 タワー
tō kyō ta wā
(to-kyo-tah wah)

1 - ^{とう きょう} 東京 タワー を ^し 知 っ て
tō kyō ta wā o shi t te
(to-kyo-tahwah o shee'té)

い ま す か。①
i ma su ka.
(eemahs' kah)

2 - はい、^し 知 っ て い ま す。
ha i, shi t te i masu.
(hai shee'té eemahs')

- ③ Where are you going?
doko . ikimasu . .
- ④ I'm going over there.
. ikimasu
- ⑤ That's expensive!
takai desu . .

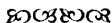
Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - o -. ② nani -. ③ - e - ka. ④ asoko e -. ⑤ - ne.

Lesson Six (-th / six / lesson) 6

The Tower of Tōkyō (Tōkyō tower)

- 1 - Do you know the Tower of Tōkyō?
(Tōkyō Tower / [object] / know / [question])
- 2 - Yes, I know it.
(yes / know)



Notes

- ① The Tower of Tōkyō is a lot like the Eiffel Tower. While it's taller by a few meters, it's also newer (constructed in 1958). Flocks of tourists, both Japanese and foreign, squeeze in to admire the panoramic view from the top.

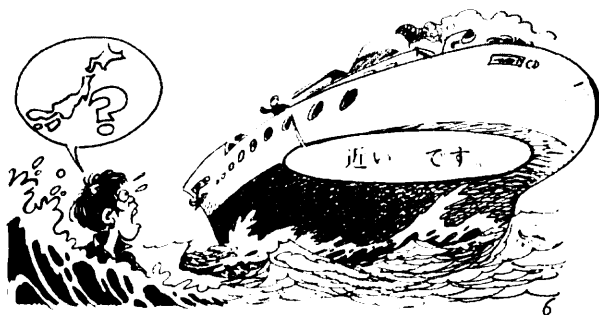
- 3- ここ から どう 行きます か。
 ko ko ka ra dō i ki ma su ka.
 (koko kahrah do- eekeemahs' kah)
- 4- まず 目黒 駅 まで 歩きます。②
 ma zu me gu ro e ki ma de a ru ki ma su.
 (mahzoo mégooro ékee mahdé ahrookeemahs')
- 5 近い です。
 chi kai de su.
 (cheekai dés')
- 6 そこから 渋谷 駅 まで
 so ko ka ra shi bu ya e ki ma de
 (soko kahrah sheebooya ékee mahdé
 電車 で 行きます。②③
 den sha de i ki ma su.
 denshah dé eekeemahs')
- 7 それから 渋谷 駅 から タワー
 so re ka ra shi bu ya e ki ka ra ta wā
 (sorékahrah sheebooyah ékee kahrah tahwah
 まで バス で 行きます。
 ma de ba su de i ki ma su.
 mahdé bahs' dé eekeemahs')
- 8 タワー に 水族館 があります。
 ta wā ni su i zo ku ka nga a ri masu.
 (tahwah nee sooeezokookan gah ahreemahs')

Notes

- ② Meguro and Shibuya are the names of two train stations in downtown Tōkyō. Located a few minutes from each other on one of the main lines, they are at the centers of two of Tōkyō's principal neighborhoods.

- 3 – How do you get there from here?
(here / from / how / go / [question])
- 4 – First, we walk to the Meguro station.
(first / Meguro-station / until / walk)
- 5 That's very close
(be close / it is)
- 6 From there, we go by train until the Shibuya station.
(there / from / Shibuya-station / until / train / [means] / go)
- 7 Then we take the bus from the Shibuya station to the Tower.
(then / Shibuya-station / from / Tower / until / bus / [means] / go)
- 8 In the Tower there's an aquarium.
(Tower / [place] / aquarium / [subject] / exist)

近いです



- ▶ ③ 電車 ^{でんしゃ} **densha** (*denshah*). In Lesson 5, we saw (in notes 2 and 3) how to write **sho**. **sha** is written with the same principle: し **shi** + a little や **ya** = しゃ. For the syllables with **sh**, we now know how to write **shi** し, **sho** しょ, and **sha** しゃ.

6 9 おもしろい です。
o mo shi ro i de su.
(omosheeroee dés')

10 おみやげ の 店 も たくさん
o mi ya ge no mi se mo ta ku sa n
(omeeyahgé no meesé mo tahkoosan)

あります。

a ri ma su.
ahreemahs')

□

れん しゅう

練習 rensū (ren shu-)

Exercise 1

① タワー へ 行きます。

tawā e ikimasu.
(tahwah é eekeemahs')

② 着きました。

tsukimashita.
(tsookeemash'tah)

③ 入りました。

hairimashita.
(haeereemahsh'tah)

- 9 That's interesting.
(interesting / it is)
- 10 There are also many souvenir shops.
(gift / [relation] / shop / also / many / exist)

- ④ タワー まで ^{ある} 歩きました。
tawā made arukimashita
(tahwah mahdē ahrookeemash'tah)
- ⑤ タワー に ^{みせ} 店 が たくさん あります。
tawā ni mise ga takusan arimasu
(tahwah nee meesé gah tahkoosan ahreemahs')

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I'm going to the Tower. ② I arrived. ③ I entered. ④ I walked to the Tower. ⑤ There are many stores at the Tower.

7 Exercise 2

... に ^{こと} ^ば 言葉 を ^い 入れ なさい
... ni kotoba o i re na sa i
(nee kotobah o eéré nahsai)

Fill in the blanks with the missing words
(... / [place] / word / [object] / enter)

- ① I'm going to Meguro
meguro . ikimasu
- ② I went to Meguro
meguro e iki
- ③ I went from Meguro to Shibuya
meguro shibuya made ikimashita

7 ^{だい} ^{なな} ^か 第七課 da i na na ka (dai nanah kah)

まとめ
matome
(mahtomé)

Revision and Notes

Let's take a break after six lessons and look at what we've learned.
You'll be surprised.

1. Verbs. No doubt you've already remarked on the similarities.
Let's recapitulate:

Lessons 2, 5, 6 ^い 行きます ikimasu (eekeemahs')

Lesson 3 ^た 食べます tabemasu (tahbémahs')

- ④ I went from Shibuya to the Tower of Tōkyō
shibuya kara tōkyō-tawā iki
- ⑤ I went there by bus.
basu . . ikimasu
- ⑥ Let's go by bus.
basu de iki

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - e -. ② - mashita. ③ - kara -. ④ - made - mashita. ⑤ - de -.
⑥ - mashō.

Lesson Seven (-th / seven / lesson) 7

Lesson 3	飲みます <i>nomimasu</i> (<i>nomeemahs'</i>)
Lessons 4, 5, 6	あります <i>arimasu</i> (<i>ahreemahs'</i>)
Lesson 5	買います <i>kaimasu</i> (<i>kaheemahs'</i>)
Lesson 6	歩きます <i>arukimasu</i> (<i>ahrookeemahs'</i>)

The suffix **ます masu** (*mahs'*) is the most common form for ALL verbs for ALL PERSONS in the PRESENT TENSE, and very often for the future tense, too (see Lesson 2, item 7). For certain forms, we've also seen the negative equivalent: all you have to do is replace **ます masu** (*mahs'*) with **ません masen** (*mahsen*):

食べます	tabemasu (<i>tahbémahs</i>) to eat (I eat, you eat, s/he eats, they eat...)
食べません	tabemasen (<i>tahbemahsen</i>) not to eat (I/you don't eat, he doesn't eat...)
飲みます	nomimasu (<i>nomeemahs</i>) to drink
飲みません	nomimasen (<i>nomeemahsen</i>) not to drink
買います	kaimasu (<i>kaheemahs</i>) to buy
買いません	kaimasen (<i>kaheemahsen</i>) not to buy

And you will soon see for yourself how to make the negative forms for other verbs.

And we have also seen another series of similarities: 見ました **mimashita** (*meemahshtah*), Lesson 2, item 1; わかりました **wakarimashita** (*wahkahreemahshtah*), Lesson 1, item 3; 着きました **tsukimashita** (*tsookeemahshtah*), Lesson 5, item 6. Here, to express the past tense, we replace ます **masu** (*mahs*) with ました **mashita** (*mahshtah*).

And don't forget Lesson 1, item 2: 行きましょう **ikimashō** (*eekeemahsho-*), or lesson 5, item 7, 入りましょう **hairimashō** (*haheereemahsho-*).

Here, it's ましょう **mashō** (*mahsho-*) that replaces ます **masu** (*mahs*). This is the form you use to express a command to yourself and, eventually, to those with you: "Let's go!" or "Let's enter". So we already have, after just six lessons, four fundamental forms you can use, if you like, to construct sentences with all the verbs we've seen. Not too shabby, eh?

2. Pay special attention to あります **arimasu** (*ahreemahs*) from Lessons 5 and 6. This verb is a little bit odd, because it corresponds to our *there is* or *there are*, but it actually means "to be found, to exist (in a certain place), are located", and it's only used for inanimate objects (for living beings, we use another verb). So remember this construction: *There are stores*: 店 **が** あります **mise ga**

arimasu (*meesé gah ahreemahs*'), where ^あり ^まい ^す *mise* (*meesé*) is the subject of *あります arimasu* (*ahreemahs*'). "Stores exist (here) / There is a store (here)".

3. Since we're talking about the subject, have you noticed that in addition to just *あります arimasu* (*ahreemahs*'), no other sentences have a grammatical subject? Where in English we have to say "I, you, etc.", in Japanese they don't say anything. Corresponding words do, of course, exist, but this is one of the keys to Japanese: **As long as it's not essential to comprehension, the Japanese language does not require a subject.**

If someone looks at you and asks: ビールを飲みますか *bīru o nomimasu ka* (*bee-roo o nomeemahs' kah*), and gives no other indication, then it's pretty obvious the question is directed at you. So there's no reason to be so precise about it. This automatically means "Would **you** like some beer?". If the person asking the question would like to address the question to someone else, then he or she could use the person's name in the place of subject. In your answer, the same thing can happen: if you're replying about yourself, then it's obvious that there's an implied "I ...". And *飲みます nomimasu* (*nomeemahs*') is all you need to say *I drink*.

4. To respond with a "yes", you should know that we almost never use the word that simply means "yes" (or, for that matter, "no"), but we repeat the verb in its affirmative form (for "no", of course, we use the negative form). To give more force to the answer, we can add to the verb the word はい *hai*, which means *yes*, as in Lesson 4, item 2: はい、持っています *hai, motte imasu* (*hai mo'té eemahs*'), *Yes, I have one*, and Lesson 6, item 2: はい、知っています *hai, shitte imasu* (*hai shi'té eemahs*'), *Yes, I know*. But the はい *hai* is never obligatory.

5. In the introduction, we spoke about the 10 grammatical particles, those little syllables that indicate the function of the preceding

- 7 word. And so, without even noticing, we have already come across and used 7 of these particles, and used them many times:
- を **o** (Lessons 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) for the object complement;
 - が **ga** (Lessons 4, 5, 6) for the subject;
 - に **ni** (Lessons 4, 5, 6) to indicate where something is located; *in; at;*
 - へ **e** (Lessons 1, 5) to indicate the place where one is going; *to;*
 - で **de** (Lesson 6) for the complement of means; *by;*
 - から **kara** (Lesson 6) which always expresses the point of departure; *from;*
 - まで **made** (Lesson 6) which balances **kara** and expresses destination; *until.*

Of course you haven't memorized them all yet, but don't worry, we haven't seen the last of them!

6. In the notes to each lesson, we've already discussed a lot about the writing of Japanese. But in the first six lessons, we've already come across the most delicate orthographical points. And we'll be seeing them all over and over again, so you just need to pay a bit of attention. To go over it one more time:

- The **hiragana** ん is transcribed as **n** all on its own at the end of a syllable (Lesson 2, note 2).
- The ん **u** that shows up in **hiragana** to tell us that the preceding syllable is long (Lesson 2, note 4): そう **sō** (so-).
- In **katakana**, the dash that indicates that the following vowel is long (Lesson 3, note 3).
- The little つ that tells us that the preceding consonant is doubled, or given extra stress: っ **ikka** (ee'kah), も **motte** (mo'té), い **issho** (ee'sho) (Lesson 4, note 1; Lesson 5, note 2).
- The way of writing **sh** before a vowel other than *i*: し **shi** (shee), し **sho** (sho), and し **sha** (shah) (Lesson 5, note 2; Lesson 6, note 3).

We've spoken a lot about writing in the notes and in the revision lesson, but calm down, it won't be that hard! In these 7 Lessons, we have already covered just about everything irregular that can come up with the kana. At any rate, for the moment there's no need to have everything memorized by heart, but only to understand, so that you can read the following lessons with ease. You'll see, when you get to the next revision chapter, that how to write will seem obvious, and at the following review, you won't even be thinking about it at all! Just remember, pay attention to the pronunciation, especially to the long vowels!

8 ^{だい はっ か} 第八課 ① dai hak ka (dai ha'kah)

^{えい が}
映画

ei ga

(é-gah)

- 1 - ^{きのう} 昨日 ^{なに} 何を ^し しました ^か か。
kinō nani o shi mashi ta ka.
(keeno- nanee o sheemahshtah kah)
- 2 - ^{とも} 友 ^{だち} 達 ^が が ^き 来 ^{まし} ました。
tomo dachi ga ki mashi ta.
(tomodahchee gah keemahshtah)
- 3 ^{いっしょ} 一緒に ^{えい が} 映画 ^い に行 ^き きました。②③④
is sho ni ei ga ni i ki ma shi ta.
(ee'sho- nee é-gah nee eekeemahshtah)
- 4 - ^{なん} 何 ^の の ^{えい が} 映画 ^み を ^み 見 ^{まし} ました ^か か。⑤
nan no ei ga o mi ma shi ta ka.
(nan no é-gah o meemahshtah kah)

Notes

- ① Again this little つ (a *hiragana* normally pronounced *tsu* in its normal size), to indicate that we have a double **kk** (cf. Lesson 7, par. 6).
- ② Of all the particles (cf. Lesson 7, par. 5), it's the **に ni** that will be the most challenging. But... it is relative. From now to the next revision chapter, we will have just about completed it. Here, with the word **一緒 issho** (ee'sho-), it is part of an expression that works just like an English adverb: **一緒に** ▶

The Cinema (cinema)

- 1 – What did you do yesterday?
(yesterday / what / [object] / did / [question])
- 2 – A friend came.
(friend / [subject] / came)
- 3 – We went to the movies together.
(together / [adverbial] / movie / [goal] / went)
- 4 – What movie did you see?
(what / [relation] / movie / [object] / watched / [question])

ポイント

- ▶ **issho ni** (ee'sho-nee): *together*. The **ni** makes 'together' an adverb in this case. Consider how in "we are together", it is an adjective, while in "we went to the movie together", it's an adverb. In Japanese, the latter requires a **ni**.
- ③ 映画 **eiga** (é-gah). In Japanese **eiga** means both *a movie* and *the movies*, so it can be used in the sentence 'We watched an American movie', and 'We went to the movies'.
- ④ Still the same **ni**, but this time, it follows a noun which expresses an activity 映画 **eiga** (é-gah), *the movies*, and is followed by a verb that indicates movement 行きました **ikimashita** (eekeemahshtah), *went*. In this case, **ni** means that this activity is the goal of the movement. The same **ni**, after a destination, means *to*. Even though a movie is not a place per se, it is the same as the English "going *to* the movies," where "the movies" really stands for "the movie theater".
- ⑤ The word 何 *what*, has two forms: なん **nani** (cf. item 1), but also, as in here in item 4, なん **nan** (*nan*) when it comes before a の **no**.

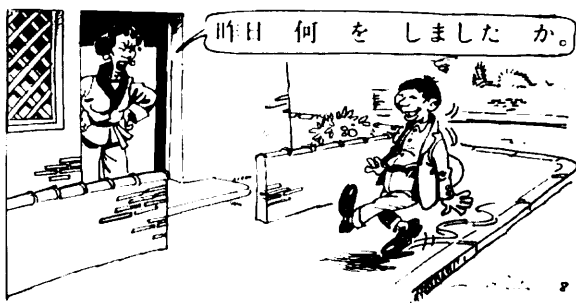
- 5- アメリカの映画を見ました。
 a me ri ka no ei ga o mi ma shi ta.
 (ahméreekah no é-gah o meemahshtah)
- 6 チャップリンの「モダン・
 cha p pu ri n no mo da n
 (chah'p'reen no modahn
 タイムズ」を見ました。⑥
 ta i mu zu o mi mashi ta.
 taimz' o meemahshtah)
- 7- おもしろかったですか。
 o mo shi ro ka t ta desu ka.
 (omosheerokah'tah des' kah)
- 8- わかりません。
 wa ka ri ma se n.
 (wahkahreemahsen)
- 9 眼鏡を忘れました。
 me gane o wasu re ma shi ta.
 (mégahné o wahsoorémahshtah)
- 10 よく見えませんでした。⑦
 yo ku mi e ma se n de shi ta.
 (yokoo meeémahsen deshtah) □

Notes

- ⑥ These brackets serve the same purpose as quotes in English, surrounding the titles of books, movies, magazines, and some brand names, or bits of dialogue in books.
- ⑦ A new form of verb! Simply the negative version of ました *mashita* (*mahshtah*) (the past tense). よく 見えました *yoku* ▶

- 5 – We saw an American movie.
(America / [relation] / movie / [object] / watched)
- 6 We saw Chaplin's *Modern Times*.
(Chaplin / [relation] / *Modern Times* / [object] / watched)
- 7 – Was it good?
(was interesting / it is / [question])
- 8 – I don't know
- 9 I forgot my glasses
(glasses / [object] / forgot)
- 10 I couldn't see very well.
(well / could not see)

おもしろ



- ▶ **miemashita** (*yokoo meeémahshtah*), *I could see well*, is in the negative. よく見えませんでした **yoku miemasen deshita** (*yokoo meeémahsen deshtah*), *I couldn't see well*. Now you know how to make the past tense negative!

Exercise 1

- ① 友達 と 一緒に 買物 に行きました。
 tomodachi to issho ni kaimono ni ikimashita.
 (tomodahchee to ee'sho-nee kaheemono ni eekeemashtah)
- ② 何 を 買いましたか。
 nani o kaimashita ka.
 (nanee o kaheemashtah kah)
- ③ 映画 の 本 を 買いました。
 eiga no hon o kaimashita.
 (é-gah no hon o kaheemashtah)

Exercise 2

... に 言葉 を 入れ なさい

- ① Have you seen Chaplin's movies?
 chappurin o mimashita ka
- ② Could you see well?
 mie ka
- ③ What books did you buy?
 hon o kaimashita ka
- ④ A friend came.
 tomodachi mashita

- ④ ^{めがね}眼鏡 ^かを 買いましたか。
 megane o kaimashita ka.
 (mégané o kaheemahshtah kah)
- ⑤ ^か買いませんでした。
 kaimasen deshita.
 (kaheemahsen deshtah)

Answers to Exercise 1

① I went shopping with a friend. ② What did you buy? ③ I bought a book about movies. ④ Did you buy glasses? ⑤ No.

- ⑤ I didn't go.
 iki

Answers to Exercise 2

① - no eiga -. ② yoku - mashita -. ③ nan no -. ④ - ga ki -.
 ⑤ - masen deshita.

9 ^{だい きゅう か} 第九課 ① dai kyū ka (dai kyu- kah)

ちゅう か りょう り
中華 料理 ①
chū ka ryō ri
(chu-kah ryo-ree)

1 - ^{こん ばん} 今晚 ^{ちゅうか} 中華 ^{りょうり} 料理 を
kon ban chū ka ryō ri o
(konban chu-kah ryo-ree o

^た 食べましょう か。 ②
ta be ma shō ka.
(tahbémahsho- kah)

2 - ああ、 いい です ね。
a a, i i de su ne.
(ah- ee- dés' né)

3 ^{ちゅうか} 中華 ^{りょうり} 料理 が ^{だいす} 大好き です。
chū ka ryō ri ga daisu ki de su.
(chu-kah ryo-ree gah dais'kee dés')

4 - ^{わたくし} 私 も。
watakushi mo.
(watahkooshee mo)

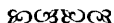
Notes

- ① Here we meet the final difficulty of spelling in Japanese. There are many syllables with what we call a "semivowel". A semivowel is, for example, the *y* sound in words like "few", "hue", or "barbecue". In our lesson here, it is the *y* in *kyū* and *ryō*. We can write *yu* or *yo* with *kana* (the syllabic system) as *yu* ゆ and *yo* よ, but we can't write the *k* or *r* on their own! So the Japanese have devised a convention of fiddling with the size of characters. Take the *kana* for ▶

In a Chinese Restaurant

(Chinese cuisine)

- 1 – Shall we go to a Chinese restaurant tonight?
(tonight / Chinese cuisine / [object] / let's eat / [question])
- 2 – Oh! What a great idea!
(oh / good / it is / [agreement])
- 3 I love Chinese cuisine.
(Chinese cuisine / [subject] / favorite / it is)
- 4 – Me, too.
(me / also)



▶ **ki** or **ri** – き or り – and follow it with a shrunken **yu** ゆ or **yo** よ. So we get **kyu**, きゅ; **kyo**, きょ; **ryu**, りゅ; and **ryo**, りょ. And because in this case (**kyū** and **ryō**) we are dealing with long vowels, we add the う (u) kana (cf. Lesson 2, note 4), which indicates a long vowel, leaving us with **kyū**, きゅう and **ryō**, りょう. For **chū** (*chu*-), we have a problem writing **ch** before a vowel other than **i**. Does this remind you of anything? Take a look at Lesson 5, where we had the same problem with **sh**. And we have the same solution: a big **chi** ち, followed by a small **yu** ゆ, **yo** よ, or **ya** や: **chu** ちゅ, **cho** ちょ, and **cha** ちゃ. And if the vowel is long: **chū** ちゅう and **chō** ちょう.

- ② 料理 ^{りょうり} **ryōri** (*ryo-ree*) is a word that means *cooking*, as in, 'the manner of preparing food', but Japanese will also use this word in the way English will use 'restaurant', with the name of such and such a country: 中華料理 ^{ちゅうか りょうり} **chūka ryōri** (*chu-kah ryo-ree*), *Chinese cooking* or *Chinese restaurant*, 日本料理 ^{にほん りょうり} **nihon ryōri** (*neehon ryo-ree*), *Japanese cuisine*, *Japanese restaurant*.

5 スープ と 肉 と 魚 を
 sū pu to niku to sakana o
 (su-poo to neekoo to sahkanah o)

とりましょう。③
 to ri ma shō.
 (toreemahsho-)

6- そう です ね。
 sō de su ne.
 (so- des né)

7- お 箸 で 食べます か。④
 o hashi de ta be ma su ka.
 (o hahshee dé tahbémahs' kah)

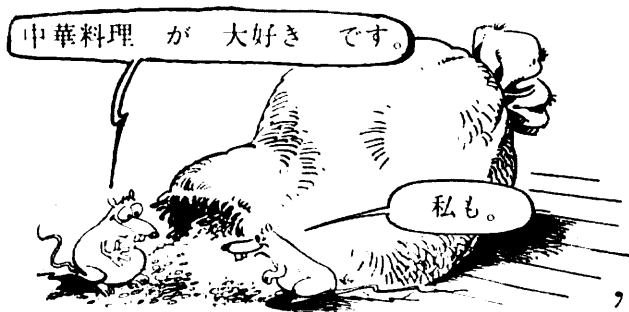
8- いいえ、フォーク で 食べます。③
 i i e, fō ku de ta bema su.
 (ee-é fo-koo dé tahbémahs')

9- おねがい します。 フォーク
 o ne ga i shi ma su. fō ku
 (onégahee sheemahs') (fo-koo
 を 下さい。
 o kuda sa i.
 o koodahsai)

Notes

- ③ Remember? This little dash is used to indicate a long vowel in *katakana*, used for foreign words.
- ④ 箸 ^{ハシ} *hashi* (*hahshee*) on its own means *chopsticks*. So then why お 箸 ^{ハシ} *o hashi* (*oh hahshee*)? Very often, words that express objects in daily life are preceded by this little お, like a notation of familiarity.

- 5 Let`s have soup, meat and fish.
(soup / and / meat / and / fish / [object] / let`s take)
- 6 – Yes.
(so / it is / [agreement])
- 7 – Do you eat with chopsticks?
([familiarity]-chopsticks / [means] / eat / [question])
- 8 – No, I eat with a fork.
(no / fork / [means] / eat)
- 9 – Excuse me! A fork, please!
(please) (fork / [object] / give me)



Don't be overwhelmed by this influx of notes. It won't last long! But while on the one hand we still have a few points to settle in terms of writing, on the other hand we are dealing with more and more difficult sentences! But we promise, the next review chapter will be the last time we talk about issues of spelling and writing. After that, all you will have to do is remember them.

- 9 10 - はい、どうぞ。
 ha i, dō zo.
 (hai do-zo)
- 11 - ありがとう。
 a ri ga tō.
 (ahreegahto-)
- 12 おいしい です か。
 o i shi i de su ka.
 (oeshee- des' kah)
- 13 - とても おいしい です。
 to te mo o i shi i de su.
 (totémo ooeshee- des')
- 14 - また 来^きましょう。
 ma ta ki ma shō.
 (mahtah keemahsho-)

□

れん しゅう
 練習 rensū

Exercise 1

- ① テレビ が 大^{だい}好^すき です。
 terebi ga daisuki desu.
 (térébee gah dais'kee dés')
- ② とても 暑^{あつ}い です ね。
 totemo atsui desu ne.
 (totémo ahtsooeé dés'né)
- ③ 昨日 スープ と 魚^{さかな} を
 kinō sūpu to sakana o
 (keeno- su-poo to sahkanah o)

- 10 – Yes, here you are.
 11 – Thank you.
 12 Is it good?
(be good / it is / [question])
 13 – It's delicious.
(very / be good / it is)
 14 – Let's come again.
(again / let's come)

^た
 食べました。

tabemashita.
tahbémash'tah)

④ フォーク で ^た食べません。

fōku de tabemasen.
(fo-koo dé tahbémahsen)

⑤ お ^{はし}箸 を ^{くだ}下さい。

o hashi o kudasai.
(o hahshee o koodahsai)

Answers to Exercise 1

① I love television. ② It's very hot! ③ Yesterday I had (ate) soup and fish. ④ I don't eat with a fork. ⑤ Chopsticks, please.

10 Exercise 2

...に ^{こと}言葉 ^ば を ^い入れなさい

- ① I love meat.
niku . . daisuki desu
- ② We eat fish with a fork.
sakana . fōku . . tabe
- ③ It's very good.
. oishii desu
- ④ Bread, please.
pan o

10 ^{だい}第十 ^{じゅう}課 ^か ① dai juk ka (dai ju'kah)

テレビ
te re bi
(térébee)

- 1- お ^{すもう}相撲 ^み を ^み見ました か。 ②
o su mō o mi mashi ta ka.
(o soomo- o meemahshtah kah)
- 2- はい、テレビ ^み で ^み見ました。
ha i. te re bi de mi mashi ta.
(hai térébee dé meemahshtah)

Notes

- ① じゅ **ju** (*ju*). As with **shu** (*shu*) and **chu** (*chu*), a large じ **ji** and a small っ **yu** gives us じゅ **ju**. And then, remember, the little っ + か for **kka**.

- ⑤ Tomorrow I'm going to a Chinese restaurant.
ashita chūka ryōri
- ⑥ Great idea!
. . . desu . . .

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - ga -. ② - o - de - masu. ③ totemo -. ④ - kudasai. ⑤ - ni
ikimasu. ⑥ ii - ne.

Lesson Ten (-th / ten / lesson) 10

Television (television)

- 1 - Did you see the sumō wrestling?
([familiarity]-sumō / [object] / watched / [question])
- 2 - Yes, I saw it on television.
(yes / television / [means] watched)

お相撲

- ▶ ② Sumō wrestling is a sport –or more like a spectacle– very popular in Japan. Don't try this at home. The first rule of the sport is to be as absolutely obese as possible, and the competitors truly are mammoth. It's a far cry from the short and skinny stature of most Japanese... more like 150+ kilos of wrestling mass. The battle takes place in a circle of strict dimensions, with only two fighters, face to face. The goal is to push your opponent out of the ring. Matches are often broadcast on Japanese television, and the champions are real stars in Japan. In the phrase お相撲 o sumō, we once again find the お o of familiarity (cf. Lesson 9, note 4).

- 3- また お ^{すもう}相撲 の シーズン
 ma ta o su mō no shī zu n
 (mahtah o soomo- no shee-zoon)
 です ね。
 de su ne.
 dés' né)
- 4- そう です ね。
 sō de su ne.
 (so- dés' né)
- 5- よく テレビ を ^み見ます か。
 yo ku te re bi o mi ma su ka.
 (yokoo térébee o meemahs' kah)
- 6- ^{ときどき}時々 ^み見ます。③
 toki doki mi ma su.
 (tokeedokee meemahs')
- 7- テレビ で ^{なに}何 を ^み見ます か。
 te re bi de nani o mi ma su ka.
 (térébee dé nanee o meemahs' kah)
- 8- ニュース と ホーム・ドラマ を
 nyū su to hō mu • do ra ma o
 (nyu-soo to ho-moo dorahmah o)
^み見ます。④
 mi ma su.
 meemahs')

Notes

- ③ We use the little sign 々 to avoid writing the same *kanji* (Chinese character) twice. Here, it would be the same as writing ^{ときどき}時時 **tokidoki**.

- 3 – It's the new sumō season.
(*anew / [familiarity]-sumō / [relation] / season / it is / [agreement]*)
- 4 – That's right!
(*so / it is / [agreement]*)
- 5 – Do you often watch television?
(*often / television / [object] / watch / [question]*)
- 6 – Sometimes.
(*sometimes / watch*)
- 7 – What do you watch on television?
(*television / [means] / what / [object] / watch / [question]*)
- 8 – I watch the news and the television dramas
(*news / and / home dramas / [object] / watch*)

日本語訳



- ▶ ④ ホーム・ドラマ *home-drama*: a few actors, a few props, lots of sentimentality, and a whole lot of *tears*: this is home-drama, television dramas of fifteen minutes (or sometimes even a whole hour), broadcast on television in the middle of the day, relaying family dramas such as problems between a couple, between parents and children, etc.

10 9 - どちらが ^す好き ですか。⑤
do chi ra ga su ki de su ka.
(docheerah gah s'kee dés' kah)

10 - どちらも ^す好き です。
do chi ra mo su ki de su.
(docheerah mo s'kee dés')

□

Notes

- ⑤ どちら dochira (docheerah), literally, "which of the two options". The word is used with an adjective, as in the example above, to ask a question comparing the merits of two objects. ▶

れん しゅう
練習 renshū

Exercise 1

① どちらが ^{たか}高い ですか。
dochira ga takai desu ka.
(docheerah gah takhai dés' kah)

② よく テレビを ^み見ます。
yoku terebi o mimasu.
(yokoo térebee o meemahs')

③ テレビで ^{えい が}映画を ^み見ました。
terebi de eiga o mimashita.
(térebee dé é-gah o meemahshtah)

④ テレビが ^{だい す}大好き です。
terebi ga daisuki desu.
(térebee gah daisookee dés')

- 9 – Which do you prefer?
(which / [subject] / be liked / it is / [question])
- 10 – I like both.
(both / be liked / it is)



- ▶ We don't even need, as you see, to use a word meaning "more", as you would in English. Thus, "Which do you like?", rather than "Which do you like more?"

- ⑤ テレビのニュースが好きです。
 terebi no nyūsu ga suki desu.
 (térébee no nyu-soo gah s'kee dés')

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Which one of these two is more expensive? ② I often watch television. ③ I saw a movie on television. ④ I love television. ⑤ I like the news on television.

11 Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば} 言葉 を ^い 入れ ない

- ① Do you often watch sumō?
o sumō ka
- ② I watch the news and movies.
. eiga o mimasu
- ③ Which of the two is closer?
. chikai desu ka

11 ^{だいじゅういつか} 第十一課 dai jū ik ka (dai ju- ee'kah)

^{あさ}
朝
asa
(ahsah)

- 1 - ^{あさ} 朝 ^{なん} 何 ^じ 時 ^に に ^お 起きます か。 ①
asa nan ji ni o ki masu ka.
(ahsah nan jee nee okeemahs' kah)
- 2 - ^{じゅう} 十 ^{いち} 一 ^じ 時 ^に に ^お 起きます。 ①
jū ichi ji ni o ki masu.
(ju- eechee jee nee okeemahs')
- 3 - ^{おそ} 遅い ですね。
oso i de su ne.
(osoeé dés' né)
- 4 ^{よる} 夜 ^{なん} 何 ^じ 時 ^に に ^ね 寝ます か。
yoru nan ji ni ne ma su ka.
(yoroó nan jee nee némahs' kah)

- ④ I saw it on television.
 mimashita
- ⑤ Oh really?
 . . . desu ka

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - o yoku mimasu -. ② nyūsu to -. ③ dochira ga -. ④ terebi de -. ⑤ a sō -.

Lesson Eleven (-th / ten-one / lesson) 11

The Morning

(morning)

- 1 - What time do you wake up in the morning?
 (morning / what-o'clock / [time] / wake up / [question])
- 2 - I wake up at eleven o'clock.
 (ten-one-o'clock / [time] / wake up)
- 3 - That's late!
 (be late / it is / [agreement])
- 4 - What time do you go to sleep at night?
 (night / what-o'clock / [time] / sleep / [question])

練習問題

Notes

- ① Oh, yes, there's also this に ni. This time, it's used with time words. It lets us know at what moment the action happens: 何時に nan ji ni (nan jee nee), at what time; 十一時に jū ichi ji ni (ju- eechee jee nee), at 11 o'clock; 三時に san ji ni (san jee nee), at 3 o'clock.

- 5 - 夜中よなか の さん 三 時じ に 寝ねます。
 yo naka no san ji ni ne ma su.
 (yonahkah no san jee nee némahs')
- 6 でも 今日きょう は 十じゅう 時じ に
 de mo kyō wa jū ji ni
 (démo kyo- wah ju- jee nee
 お
 起きました。
 o ki mashi ta.
 okeemahshtah)
- 7 - それでも 遅おそい です ね。
 so re demo oso i de su ne.
 (sorédémo osoee dés' né)
- 8 - 午後ごご から 夜中よなか まで バー
 go go ka ra yonaka ma de bā
 (gogo kahrah yonahkah mahdé bah-
 はたら
 で 働いて います。②③
 de hatara i te i masu.
 dé hahtahraheeté eemahs')
- 9 - それなら わかります。
 so re na ra wa ka ri masu.
 (sorénahrah wahkahreemahs')
- 10 大變たいへん です ね。
 taihen de su ne.
 (taihén dés'né)

□

- 5 – I go to bed at three in the morning.
(middle night / [relation] / three-o'clock / [time] / sleep)
- 6 – But today I got up at ten o'clock.
(but / today / [emphasis] / ten-o'clock / [time] / get up)
- 7 – That's still late!
(all the same / be late / it is / [agreement])
- 8 – I work in a bar from the afternoon until late at night.
(afternoon / since / middle night / until / bar / [place] / be working)
- 9 – In that case, I understand.
(in that case / be understandable)
- 10 – That's terrible!
(terrible / it is / [agreement])

Notes

- ② ^{はたら}働いて います **hataraitte imasu** (*hahtahraheeté'eemahs'*). For the first time, we have here an example of the other grand series of Japanese verbs. Until now it was the model ...ます ...**masu** (*mahs'*) and its variations (cf. Lesson 7, par. 1). For our second model, we have ...て います ...**te imasu** (*té eemahs'*) and variations. This lets us know that the action the verb describes is in fact happening at the moment of speech. ^{はたら}働いて います **bā de hataraitte imasu** (*bah-déhah-tahraeeté'eemahs'*), *I work*, in the sense of "I am employed in such a place": "Currently, I am employed (at a bar)". This is a lot like -ing in English, though we use it for more than just things happening right at this moment.
- ③ We have seen **de** (*dé*) used to indicate means (cf. Lesson 6, item 7). Here we have another use for **de**, where it shows us the place an action takes place.

Exercise 1

- ① 夜 早く 寝ます。
 yoru hayaku nemasu.
 (yoroō hahyahkoo némahs')
- ② 昨日 早く 起きません でした。
 kinō hayaku okimasen deshita.
 (keeno- hahyahkoo okeemahsen déshtah)
- ③ 八 時 に 起きます。
 hachi ji ni okimasu.
 (hahchee jee nee okeemahs')

Exercise 2

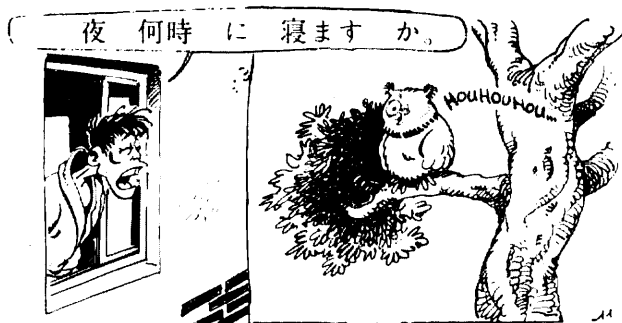
... に 言葉 を 入れ ない

- ① I work in a store.
 mise .. hataraite imasu
- ② What time do you wake up?
 okimasu . .
- ③ Do you go to bed early?
 nemasu ka
- ④ My friend is coming at 1 o'clock.
 tomodachi ga kimasu
- ⑤ What do you do at night?
 shimasu ka

- ④ どこで ^{はたら}働いて います か。
 doko de hataraitte imasu ka.
 (doko dé hahtahraheeté eemahs' kah)
- ⑤ 何 ^{なん}時 ^じに 買物 ^{かいもの}に 行きます か。
 nan ji ni kaimono ni ikimasu ka.
 (nan jee nee kaheemono nee eekeemahs' kah)
- ⑥ テレビ ^みを 見ません か。
 terebi o mimasen ka.
 (térébee o meemahsen kah)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① At night I go to bed early. ② Yesterday I did not get up early. ③ I get up at 8 o'clock. ④ Where do you work? ⑤ What time do (will) you go shopping? ⑥ You don't watch television?



Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - de -. ② nan ji ni - ka. ③ hayaku -. ④ - ichi ji ni -. ⑤ yoru nani o -.

12 ^{だいじゅうにか}第十二課 dai jū ni ka (dai ju-nee kah)

^{きつさてん}
喫茶店

kis sa ten

(kee'sahten)

1- こんにちは。①

ko n ni chi wa.
(konneechee wah)

2- こんにちは。

ko n ni chi wa.
(konneechee wah)

3- あそこ ^{きつさてん}の 喫茶店 へ
a so ko no kis sa ten e
(ahsoko no kee'sahten é

^い行きましょう。
i ki ma shō.
(eekeemahsho-)

4- いらっしやいませ。②

i ra s sha i mase.
(eerah'shaheemahsé)

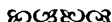
5- ^{やまだ}山田 ^{なに}さんは 何に しますか。③④

yama da sa n wa nani ni shi ma su ka.
(yahmahdah san wah nanee nee sheemahs' kah)

In the Café

(café)

- 1 – Hello!
- 2 – Hello!
- 3 – Let's go in that café.
(over there / [relation] / café / [destination] / let's go)
- 4 – Welcome!
- 5 – What will you have Mrs Yamada?
(Yamada-Mrs. / [announce] / what / [goal] / do)



Notes

- ① Here is another way to greet someone. We have seen おはようございます *ohayō gozaimasu* (*ohahyo-gozahēmahs*) (cf. Lesson 3, note 1), but こんにちは *konnichi wa* (*konnee-chee wah*) is reserved for meeting someone during the day, roughly the same as *good day* or *hello*.
- ② This is the ritual greeting reserved for waiters in a café or restaurant, or salespersons in shops, when welcoming clients and customers. Literally, it means: "Please come in".
- ③ The word *さん san* (*san*) has to follow the proper name of the person to whom you are speaking, but never your own. To speak of yourself, you just need to say your own name. In general, outside the family, Japanese speakers rarely use the word that means "you", but will address others by name, plus *さん san*.
- ④ Once again with *に ni* (*nee*). Here we take the expression as a whole: …に します *…ni shimasu* (*nee sheemahs*): *to decide on (something), to choose (something)*.

6- 私^{わたし} は コーヒー。⑤
 watashi wa kō hī.
 (wahtahshee wah ko-hee-)

7- じゃあ、コーヒーとビール
 jaa, kō hī to bī ru
 (jah- ko-hee- to bee-roo
 を^{くだ}下さい。
 o kuda sa i.
 o koodahsai)

8 お菓子^{かし}を^た食べましょうか。
 o ka shi o ta be ma shō ka.
 (o kahshee o tahbémahsho- kah)

9- いいえ、けっこうです。⑥
 i i e, ke k kō de su.
 (ee-é ké'ko- dés')

10- 本当^{ほんとう}ですか。
 hon tō de su ka.
 (honto- dés' kah)

11- ええ、本当^{ほんとう}に^{いま}けっこうです。
 e e, hon tō ni ke k kō de su.
 (é- honto- nee ké'ko- dés')

今^{いま}ダイエット^{だいえつ}をしています。⑦
 ima da i e t to o shi te i ma su.
 eemah daié'to o sheeté ee mahs')

Notes

- ⑤ 私^{わたし} We have already seen the pronunciation **watakushi** (*wah-tahkooshee*) (Lesson 9, item 4), which is most common. But here, **watashi** (*wahtahshee*) is more familiar, and used most often by women. Of course, it still means *I, me*. ▶

- 6 – I'll have a coffee.
(*me / [announce] / coffee*)
- 7 – Good, a coffee and a beer, please.
(*good / coffee / and / beer / [object] / give*)
- 8 – Should we have some cake?
(*[[familiarity]-snack] / [object] / let's eat / [question]*)
- 9 – No, not for me, thanks.
(*no / fine / it is*)
- 10 – Really?
(*true / it is / [question]*)
- 11 – Yes, really. Right now I'm on a diet.
(*yes / true / [adverbial] / fine / it is*) (*now / diet / [object] / be doing*)

練習問題



- ▶ ⑥ This is the usual expression to refuse something. Literally, it means "It's perfect the way it is, I don't need anything else."
- ⑦ しています *shiteimasu* (*sheeté eemahs'*) (cf. lesson 11, note 2), *right now, I'm doing...; currently, I'm doing...*

12 12 - ああ、そう ですか。 いつ
a a, sō de su ka. i tsu
(ah-so-dés' kah) (eetsoo)

から。

ka ra.
kahrah)
きのう

13 - 昨日 から。

kinō ka ra.
(kino-kahrah)

□

れん しゅう

練習 rensū

Exercise 1

① お菓子も食べます。

o kashi mo tabemasu.
(o kahshee mo tahbémahs')

② コーヒーが好きですか。

kōhī ga suki desu ka.
(ko-hee-gah s'kee dés' kah)

③ 大好きです。

daisuki desu.
(dais'kee dés')

④ あそこの店でカメラを買いました。

asoko no mise de kamera o kaheemashita.
(ahsoko no meesé dé kahmérah o kaheemahshtah)

- 12 – Oh really? Since when?
(oh / so / it is / [question]) (when / since)
- 13 – Since yesterday.
(yesterday / since)

- ⑤ いつから ^{はたら}働いていますか。
 itsu kara hataraitte imasu ka.
(eetsoo kahrah hahtahraheeté eemahs' kah)
- ⑥ わかりません。
 wakarimasen.
(wahkahreemahsen)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I'll have the cakes, too. ② Do you like coffee? ③ I love it. ④ I bought a camera in the store over there. ⑤ Since when have you been working. ⑥ I don't know.

13 Exercise 2

...に ^{ことば} 言葉 を ^い 入れなさい

Fill in the blanks with the missing words

- ① Hello.
.....
- ② Shall we buy apples, too?
ringo .. kai ka
- ③ I'm going to the store over there.
..... mise e ikimasu

13 ^{だいじゅうさんか} 第十三課 dai jū san ka (dai ju- san kah)

やくそく
約束

yaku soku
(yahkoosokoo)

1 - ^{けさ} 今朝 ^{ふらんす} フランス ^{じん} 人 ^{ともだち} の 友達
kesa fu ra n su jin no tomo dachi
(késah fooransoojeen no tomodahchee)

を ^{まへ} デパート の 前 で ^{いち} 一
o de pā to no mae de ichi
o dépah-to no mahé dé eechee

^{じかん} 時間 ^{まち} 待ちました。①②
ji kan machi mashi ta.
(jeekan mahcheemahshtah)

- ④ Until when are you on a diet?
 made daietto o shimasu ka
- ⑤ When did he come?
 kima ka
- ⑥ Do you like the movies?
 eiga ka

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① konnichi wa. ② – mo – mashō –. ③ asoko no –. ④ itsu –.
 ⑤ itsu – shita –. ⑥ – ga suki desu –.

Lesson Thirteen *(-th / ten-three / lesson)* 13

The Date

(date)

- 1 – This morning I waited for my French friend for an hour in front of the department store.
(this morning / France-person / [relation] / friend / [object] / department store / [relation] / before / [place] / one-hour / waited)



Notes

- ① Without a doubt, after に *ni*, the particle that appears the most is の *no*. This particle also has many different usages and meanings. In this sentence, it indicates apposition: フランス人^{フランス}の友達^{トモダチ} *furansujin no tomodachi* (*fooransoojeen no tomodahchee*): *French friend*, or, literally “friend *who is* a French Person”.
- ② A reminder: we use で *de* (*dé*) to indicate the place where an action happens (cf. Lesson 11, note 3).

2- 随分 待ちました ね。
 zui bun machi mashi ta ne.
 (zooeeboon mahcheemahshtah né)

3- はい。
 ha i.
 (hai)

4- 来ました か。
 ki mashi ta ka.
 (keemahshtah kah)

5- いいえ、来ません でした。③
 i i e, ki ma se n deshi ta.
 (ee-é keemahsen déshtah)

6- どう した の でしょう。
 dō shi ta no de shō.
 (do- shtah no désho-)

7- わかりません。
 wa ka ri ma se n.
 (wahkahreemahsen)

8- こまりました ね。
 ko ma ri mashi ta ne.
 (komahreemahshtah né)

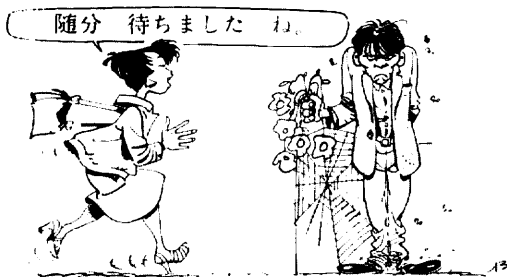
9- ええ、買物 が できません
 e e, kai mono ga de ki ma se n
 (é- kaheemono gah dékeemahsen)

でした。
 de shi ta.
 (déshtah)

10 今晚 友達 に 電話 を します。④
 konban tomodachi ni den wa o shi ma su.
 (konban tomodahchee nee denwah o sheemahs') □

- 2 – You waited a long time!
(*much / waited / [agreement]*)
- 3 – Yes
- 4 – Has he come?
(*came / [question]*)
- 5 – No, he hasn't come.
(*no / hasn't come*)
- 6 – How can that be?
(*how / did / that could be*)
- 7 – I don't know.
- 8 – That's irritating.
(*was annoyed / [agreement]*)
- 9 – Yes, I couldn't do my shopping.
(*yes / shopping / [subject] / not have been possible*)
- 10 I'll call him tonight.
(*tonight / friend / [attribution] / telephone / [object] / do*)

おどろおどろ



Notes

- ③ cf. Lesson 8, note 7.
- ④ In English we have a slew of personal pronouns – he, him, she, her, they, them – to keep us from repeating the same name over and over again. Japanese doesn't bother with them... just repeat the name, and that's it. Also note in this passage yet another usage for に *ni*, for the person who is the recipient of the action.

Exercise 1

- ① 買物 ^{かいもの} が できました か。
kaimono ga dekimashita ka.
(kaheemono gah dékeemahshtah kah)
- ② アメリカ人 ^{じん} の 友達 ^{ともだち} が 来 ^き ました。
amerikajin no tomodachi ga kimashita.
(ahméreekahjeen no tomodahchee gah keemahshtah)
- ③ デパート ^{なか} の 中 ^ま で 待 ^{まち} ました。
depāto no naka de machimashita.
(depah-to no nahkah dé mahcheemahshtah)

Exercise 2

... に 言葉 ^{ことば} を 入 ^い れ なさい

- ① I waited in front of the store.
mise machimashita
- ② Do you know how to make Chinese food?
chūka ryōri ka
- ③ Did your American friend come?
amerika tomodachi ga kimashita ka
- ④ Tonight I'm going by bus to the movies.
. basu .. eiga .. ikimasu
- ⑤ I didn't wait.
machi

- ④ 何時間待ちましたか。
 nan jikan machimashita ka.
 (nan jeekan mahcheemahshtah kah)
- ⑤ わかりません。
 wakarimasen.
 (wahkahreemahsen)
- ⑥ デパートに行きませんでした。
 depāto ni ikimasen deshita.
 (dépah-to nee eekeemahsen déshtah)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Did you do your shopping? ② My American friend has come.
 ③ I waited in the department store. ④ How many hours did you wait?
 ⑤ I don't know. ⑥ I didn't go to the department store.

- ⑥ I waited for two hours.
 ni machimashita

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - no mae de -. ② - ga dekimasu -. ③. - jin no -. ④ konban
 - de - ni -. ⑤ - masen deshita. ⑥ - jikan -.

Don't forget to read the Japanese phrases out loud. You're learning how to speak, not how to mumble!

14 ^{だいじゅうよんか}第十四課 **dai jū yon ka** (*dai ju- yon kah*)

まとめ
ma to me
(*mahtomé*)

Revision and Notes

Already Lesson 14! You see, we are making progress. And a little pause should do you well.

1. You will profit by having taken some time to go through all the orthographical rules rather thoroughly. In the preceding lessons, we've come across a few complicated syllables, such as **kyō**, **ryō**, **kyū**, **chū**, **jū**, and so on. In fact, these syllables are not of actual Japanese origin, but from when Japanese borrowed and adapted many Chinese words (we discussed this in the introduction, on page XII). There are two cases:

➤ Syllables with **sh + a, o, u**, and **ch + a, o, u**. In *kana*, there is only **shi** し and **chi** ち, but there is no **sha**, **sho**, **shu**, or **cha**, **cho**, **chu**. So we use **shi** し and **chi** ち followed by a small **ya** や, **yo**, よ, or **yu** ゆ:

sha しゃ

sho しょ

shu しゅ

cha ちゃ

cho ちょ

chu ちゅ

and if the **o** or **u** is long, then: **shō** しょう, **shū** しゅう, **chō** ちょう, and **chū** ちゅう.

➤ Syllables such as **kyō**, **kyū**; **ryō**, **ryū**. That is, a consonant + **y** + **o** or **u** (**a** is very rare). Here we take the *kana* representing the sound of the syllable followed by **i**: **ki** き, **ri** り, and add a small **yo** よ or **yu** ゆ. For instance:

kyo きよ

kyu きゅ

ryo りよ

ryu りゅ

Lesson Fourteen (-th / ten-four / lesson) 14

and when the vowel is long, then:

kyō きょう kyū きゅう ryō りょう ryū りゅう

In fact, it doesn't even matter which consonant the syllable begins with: **hyō** ひょう, **nyū** にゅう.

2. And now a little test to see if you're curious:

Let's take another look at item 9 of Lesson 10:

どちら が 好き です か *dochira ga suki desu ka* (*docheerah gah s'kee dés' kah*) and look at the two underlined *hiragana*. The first one is GA, the second one KA. Seem a bit familiar? The shape is identical, only there are a couple 'extra' dots on the GA. We find these little dots on the *hiragana* underlined with a dash: ど **do** and で **de** (*dé*). And if you look closely, you'll find these little dots all over the place on *hiragana*. Have you noticed? It's one of the ways the Japanese devised to enlarge the 46 signs that make up *katakana* and *hiragana* (cf. introduction, page IX). Here are the *kana* for syllables where the consonant is non-voiced: **ka**, **ta**, **shi**, **ho**: か、た、し、ほ in *hiragana*; and カ、タ、シ、ホ in *katakana*. And we just add two little dots to indicate when the syllable begins with a voiced consonant: が **ga**, だ **da**, じ **ji**, ぼ **bo**. And look again at Lesson 8, item 6, the title of the Chaplin film, *Modern Times*: モダン・タイムズ *modan-taimuzu*

To indicate that a syllable begins with a *p*, we use the *kana* for transcribing the consonant *h* and add a small circle. So the same symbol can be used three times –how's that for economical!

ha は ハ

ba ば バ

pa ぱ パ

hi ひ ヒ

bi び ビ

pi ぴ ピ

You'll find a complete table of the *kana* on pages 333 and 334.

- 14 3. Let's go back one more time to the particles, to reiterate the usages we have already learned for **に ni** and **で de (dé)**. Two usages for **で de (dé)**: to indicate means (cf. Lesson 13, item 6) **バス で 来ました basu de kimashita (bahs' dé keemahshtah)**: *He came by [means of] bus*; and also to indicate the place where an action happens (Lesson 13, item 1):

デパート の 前 で 待ちました。

depāto no mae de machimashita
(*dépah-to no mahé dé mahcheemahshtah*)

I waited in front of the department store. The action is "to wait", and the place is "in front of the department store".

We have *five* usages for **に ni**!

- The place where something exists (cf. Lesson 6, item 8).
- To form an adverb, such as 一緒 **に issho ni**, *together*.
- An activity that represents the goal of motion (cf. Lesson 8, item 3):

映画 **に** 行きました

eiga ni ikimashita
(*é-gah nee eekēemahshtah*)

We went to the movies where "movies" does not mean "the movie theatre", but rather "the movies" as an activity.

- The person who is the recipient of an action (cf. Lesson 13, item 10):

友達 **に** 電話 を します。

tomodachi ni denwa o shimasu
(*tomodahchee nee denwah o sheemahs'*)

I telephoned my friend.

- To indicate the time (cf. Lesson 11, items 1, 2, 4, 5, 6)

Over all, everything that marks something having to do with a specific point in time or in space (in, at), and as an adverbial suffix.

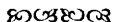
4. Without a doubt there is a sentence you have memorized –maybe without even knowing it –because it comes up so frequently. That is: **そう ですか sō desu ka (so- dés' kah)**. In the word-for-word

translation, you have seen that it means そう “so” です “it is” か “[question]”. In fact, it has become an expression the Japanese use endlessly simply to demonstrate that the listener is still paying attention to what the speaker is saying. It is kind of like our “Oh, really?” or “Oh, yeah?”. And sometimes it changes a little bit: そう ですね *sō desu ne* (so- dés' né), which is stronger, as it demonstrates agreement and the listener actually taking part in the conversation (cf. Lesson 1, note 4). If you're listening to a speaker with whom you're familiar, you can abbreviate it to そう か *sō ka* (so- kah) or そう ね *sō ne* (so- né), but that's not advised with those you don't know well, or with those who might not take kindly to such an abbreviation! It's inevitable though that in dialogue in Japanese you will often come across this expression.

You are now about to begin the third series of lessons. That means you are well on your way to learning Japanese, and you surely have many questions. That is exactly the way it is going to continue. Don't worry right now about retention: above all, understand. Observe how the sentences are formed, take in each word with help from the translation and parenthetical explanation, and take in as much as possible. Your main task for the moment is to figure out “how it works”. Of course, the sentences are almost the complete inverse of ours, and they can be a little difficult to follow, but the system has its own inscrutable logic. Just about always, it is a word, then a particle to indicate its function. And that is what you have got to take in.

And for the moment, don't worry about the writing; just continue to read and try to absorb the kana, which kana corresponds to which syllable, and let your eyes do the work by getting used to it bit by bit. If you hesitate from time to time, then you can look at the table on pages 333 and 334 for your reference.

But don't try to force yourself to retain anything. Look, absorb, understand, and in the process you will find that, before you know it, you have learned a lot of Japanese.



15 ^{だいじゅうごか}第十五課 dai jū go ka (dai ju- go kah)

^{しょうかい}
紹介

shō kai
(sho-kai)

- 1- ^{こばやし}小林 ^{みち}道子 ^こと ^{もう}申します。
ko bayashi michi ko to mō shimasu.
(kobahyahshee meecheeko to mo-sheemahs')
- 2 ^{とうきょう}東京 ^にに ^す住んで ^{います}います。
tōkyō ni su n de i masu.
(to-kyo- nee soondé eemahs')
- 3 ^{さん}三 ^{ねん}年前 ^{まえ}に ^{けっこん}結婚 ^{しました}しました。
san nen mae ni kek kon shi mashita.
(san nēn mahé nee ke'kon sheemahshtah)
- 4 ^{こども}子供 ^がが ^{ふたり}二人 ^{います}います。
ko domo ga futari i ma su.
(kodomō gah f'tahree eemahs')
- 5 ^{おんな}女の ^こ子 ^とと ^{おとこ}男の ^こ子 ^{です}です。
onna no ko to otoko no ko de su.
(o'nah no ko to otoko no ko dés')
- 6- ^{じょう}お嬢 ^{さん}さんは ^{いくつ}いくつ ^{ですか}ですか ①②
o jō sa n wa i kutsu de su ka.
(ojo-san wah eekootsoo dés' kah)

Notes

- ① お嬢さん o jō san (ojo-san). This word can only be used to talk about someone else's child, and never for a child of your own. It designates a daughter and can be used even with a girl ▶

Introduction

- 1 – My name is Michiko Kobayashi.
(*Kobayashi / Michiko / [quotation] / called*)
- 2 I live in Tōkyō.
(*Tōkyō / [place] / live*)
- 3 I have been married for three years.
(*three-years-before / [time] / marry-did*)
- 4 I have two children.
(*child / [subject] / two people / exist*)
- 5 One boy and one girl.
(*girl / and / boy / it is*)
- 6 – How old is your daughter?
(*your daughter / [announce] / how much / it is / [question]*)

ふんわり

▶ as old as 20. There are many cases in Japanese where there is one word to talk about something close to one's self, and another for talking about the same thing related to another person. The Japanese value politeness, which is both treating yourself humbly and treating others with respect, and this often shows up in these small differences in vocabulary.

② Now it is time to talk about the particle は *wa* (*wah*) that we have already seen here and there. It will likely cause a couple of problems, because it is unlike anything we use when speaking English.

To begin, we should note that it is pronounced *wa*, even though it's written with the *hiragana* は, which is usually pronounced *ha*. It is one of two *hiragana* with dual pronunciations (the other one is ん, pronounced *he* (*hé*) except when the particle indicates destination, when it's pronounced *e* (*é*)). This particle は *wa* has two usages. The first (Lesson 12, items 5 and 6), where it follows a name or a pronoun at the beginning of a sentence, serves to introduce the person or thing being spoken

- 7- ^{いま}今 ^{じゅう}十 ^ご五 ^{さい}歳 ^{です}です。
 ima jū go sai de su.
 (eemah ju- go sai dés')
- 8- え?
 e?
 (é)
- 9- はい。 ^{じつ}実 ^{さん}は ^{ねん}三 ^{まえ}年 ^に前に
 ha i. jitsu wa san nen mae ni
 (hai jeetsoo wah san nen mahé nee
^{さいこん}再婚 ^{しました}しました。 ②
 sai kon shi mashi ta.
 saikon sheemahshtah)
- 10- ^{おぼ}お坊ちゃん ^はは ^{いくつ}いくつ ^{です}ですか。 ③
 o bot cha n wa i ku tsu de su ka.
 (obo'chan wah eekootsoo dés' kah)
- 11- ^{まだ}まだ ^{いっ}一 ^{さい}歳 ^{です}です。
 ma da is sai de su.
 (mahdah ee'sai dés')

□

Notes

- ② of, as a new subject of conversation. Literally, お嬢さん ^{お嬢さん}はいくつですか *o jōsan wa ikutsu desu ka* (*ojo-san wah eekootsoo dés' kah*) could be: "Speaking of your daughter, how old is she?" And 私 ^{わたし}はコーヒー *watashi wa kōhī* (*wahtahshee wah ko-hee-*) would be "As for me, coffee" (Lesson 12, item 6). In this book, we transcribe it as "[announce]".

The second usage, following an adverb, is to strengthen the sense of the adverb. We call this usage "[emphasis]". This is the usage we come across in item 9 of this lesson. ▶

- 7 – Now she is 15 years old.
(now / ten-five-years old / it is)
- 8 – Huh?
- 9 – Yes. Actually, I remarried three years ago.
(yes) (really / [emphasis] / three-years-before / [time] / remarry-did)
- 10 – And how old is your little son?
(your little son / [announce] / how much / it is / [question])
- 11 – He's only one year old.
(yet / one-year old / it is)

おぼろおぼろ



- ▶ And there, it's finished. The explanation might seem a little long, but this particle *は wa (wah)* is one of the keys of Japanese. Understand well what it means and you have already made a great leap. And you'll see, you're on the right track.

- ③ お坊ちゃん *obotchan* (o bo'chahn). cf. Note (1). Here is another word that specifically indicates someone else's child. It means *son*, but we use it only to talk of younger boys, under the age of 13 or 14.

Exercise 1

- ① ^{おんな}女 ^この子がいます。
onna no ko ga imasu.
(o'nah no ko gah eemahs')
- ② いくつですか。
ikutsu desu ka.
(eekootsoo dés' kah)
- ③ ^{ろく}六 ^{さい}歳です。
roku sai desu.
(rokoo sai dés')
- ④ ^{いま}今 ^すどこに住んでいますか。
ima doko ni sunde imasu ka.
(eemah doko nee soondé eemahs' kah)

Exercise 2

...に ^{ことば}言葉 ^いを入れなさい

- ① How old is your son?
obotchan wa ka
- ② Fifteen years old.
jū go
- ③ I live in Tōkyō.
tōkyō imasu

⑤ に ねん まえ 二 年 前 に この カメラ を

ni nen mae ni kono kamera o
(nee nen mahé nee kono kahmérah o

か
買 いました。

kaimashita.
kaheemahshtah)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I have a daughter. ② How old is she? ③ Six years old.
④ Where do you live now? ⑤ I bought this camera two years ago.

- ④ I have two daughters.

onna no ko imasu

- ⑤ I bought these glasses five years ago.

kono megane kaimashita

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - ikutsu desu -. ② - sai desu. ③ - ni sunde -. ④ -ga futari -.
⑤ - o go nen mae ni -.

16 ^{だいじゅうろっか} 第十六課 dai jū rok ka (dai ju- ro'kah)

にちようび

日曜日

nichi yō bi

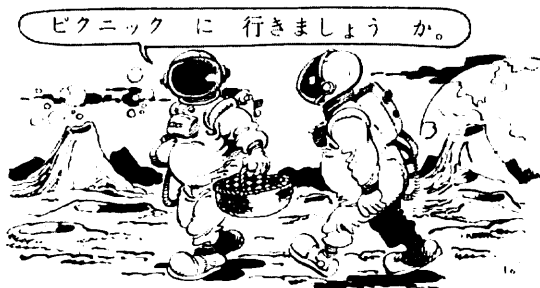
(neecheeyo-bee)

- 1 - ^{きょう} 今日 ^{にちようび} は 日曜日 ^{です。} ①
kyō wa nichi yō bi de su.
(kyo- wah neecheeyo-bee dés')
- 2 ^{てんき} お 天気 が いい ^{です} ね。
o ten ki ga i i de su ne.
(o tenkee gah ee- dés' né)
- 3 ピクニック ^に 行きましよう ^{か。}
pi ku ni k ku ni i ki ma shō ka.
(peekoonee'koo nee eekeemahsho kah)
- 4 - いい ^{です} ね。
i i de su ne.
(ee- dés' né)
- 5 ^{たなか} 田中 ^{さん} と ^{やまもと} 山本 ^{さん} を
ta naka sa n to yama moto sa n o
(tanahkah san to yahmahmoto san o
^{さそ}
誘いましよう。②
saso i ma shō.
(sahsoeemahsho-)

Sunday

- 1 – Today is Sunday.
(today / [announce] / Sunday / it is)
- 2 The weather is nice.
([familiarity]-weather / [subject] / be good / it is / [agreement])
- 3 What if we had a picnic!
(picnic / [goal] / let's go / [question])
- 4 – Oh, that sounds good.
(good / it is / [agreement])
- 5 We could invite Mr. Tanaka and Miss Yamamoto!
(Tanaka-Mr. / and / Yamamoto-Miss / [object] / let's invite)

ピクニック



Notes

- (1) cf. Lesson 15, note 2.
- (2) The word **さん** *san* (*san*) must always follow the name of the person you are talking about, regardless of age or gender. But you **never** use it for yourself (see Lesson 15, item 1).

- 6- ああ ^{かんが}それ は いい 考え
 a a so re wa i i kanga e
 (ah-soré wah ee-kangahé)
 です ね。
 de su ne.
 dés' né)
- 7- どこ へ 行きましょう か。
 do ko e i ki ma shō ka.
 (doko é eekeemahsho- kah)
- 8- 江ノ島 ^{えのしま} は いかが です か。③
 e no shima wa i ka ga de su ka.
 (énosheemah wah eekahgah dés' kah)
- 9- 何 ^{なに} を ^も持 ^いつて 行きましょう か。
 nani o mo t te i ki ma shō ka.
 (nanee o mo'té eekeemahsho- kah)
- 10- サンド・ウイッチ ^{サシ} に お 寿司
 sa n do u i t chi ni o su shi
 (sando wee'chee nee o sooshee)
- に みかん ^{カシ} に お 菓子。④⑤
 ni mi ka n ni o kashi.
 nee meekan nee o kahshee)
- 11- 子供 ^{こども} の た め に ジュース も
 ko domo no ta me ni jū su mo
 (kodomo no tahme nee ju-su mo)
- 持 ^もつて 行 ^いきましょう。⑥
 mo t te i ki ma shō.
 mo'té eekeemahsho-)

- 6 – Oh, that's a great idea!
(*oh / that / [announce] / good / idea / it is / [agreement]*)
- 7 – Where shall we go?
(*where / [destination] / let's go / [question]*)
- 8 – How about Enoshima?
(*Enoshima / [announce] / how / it is / [question]*)
- 9 – What should we bring?
(*what / [object] / bring / go / [question]*)
- 10 – Sandwiches, sushi, tangerines, and cakes.
(*sandwich / [addition] / [familiarity]-sushi / [addition] / tangerine / [addition] / [familiarity]-cakes*)
- 11 – Let's also bring juice for the children.
(*children / [relation] / for / [adverbial] / juice / also / bring / let's go*)

Notes

Notes

- ③ Enoshima is a little island (**shima** means *island*), roughly 4 kilometers (2 miles) around, located in Sagami Bay to the south of Tōkyō, close to Kamakura, a very popular spot for day trips for Tōkyō-ites.
- ④ This に **ni** (*nee*) just won't leave us alone. Here we have to look at it again, in yet another usage. Here, it serves to link many elements in a list, without a verb at the end. It is this に **ni**, for instance, that we use when we are ordering in a restaurant, as if we were adding things up.
- ⑤ 寿司 **sushi**. Sushi is one of the most typical Japanese dishes. Japanese eat those thin strips of raw fish on riceballs. A good sushi can cost you a lot since it is getting more and more difficult to find good quality fresh fish in Japan.
- ⑥ お願ねがい しましす **onagai shimasu** (*onégahee sheemahs*) is a very important and common expression in Japanese. It is used both as a general *please*, as in バターばたーお願ねがい しましす **bata-onagai shimasu** (*bahtah-onégahee sheemahs*), *please pass the butter*, and this more ritualized 'please' as in 'Would you like some tea?' 'Yes, please'.

12- ^{た なか} 田中 ^{さん} さんと ^{やまもと} 山本 ^{さん} さんに
 ta naka sa n to yamamoto sa n ni
 (tanahkah san to yahmahmoto san nee)

すぐ ^{でんわ} 電話 を かけましょう。
 su gu den wa o kake ma shō.
 soogoo denwah o kahkemahsho-)

13- はい。おねがい します。⑥
 ha i. o ne ga i shi ma su.
 (hai) (onégahee sheemahs')

□

^{れん しゅう}
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

① ^{きょう} 今日 ^{てんき} はお 天気 が いい です ね。
 kyō wa o tenki ga ii desu ne.
 (kyo- wah o tenkee gah ee- dés' né)

② サンド・ウイッチ を ^も 持って
 sando-uitchi o motte
 (sando wee'chee o mo'té)

行きましょう。
 ikimashō.
 eekeemahsho-)

③ ^{やまもと} 山本 ^{とも だち} さんの 友達 ^{さそ} を 誘い ましょう。
 yamamoto san no tomodachi o sasoimashō.
 (yahmahmoto san no tomodahchee o sahsoeemahsho-)

12 – I'll call Mr. Tanaka and Miss Yamamoto right
away.
(Tanaka-Mr. / and / Yamamoto-Miss / [object] / right away /
telephone / [object] / use)

13 – Yes. Please.

16

① ^{こばやし}小林 ^かさんのために買いました。
kobayashi san no tame ni kaimashita.
(kobahyahshee san no tahme nee kaheemahshtah)

⑤ ^いすぐ行きましょう。
sugu ikimashō.
(soogoo eekeemahsho-)

Answers to Exercise 1

① The weather is nice today. ② I'll bring sandwiches. ③ Let's invite Mr. Yamamoto's friend. ④ I bought it for Mrs. Kobayashi. ⑤ Let's go right away.

17 Exercise 2

...に ^{ことば}言葉 を ^い入れなさい

- ① I telephoned Mr. Yamada.
yamada kakemashita
- ② Today is Sunday.
kyō desu
- ③ I'm bringing books for my friend.
tomodachi hon o ikimasu

17 ^{だいじゅうななか}第十七課

dai jū nana ka (dai ju- nahnah kah)

のみ の ^{いち}市
no mi no ichi
(nomee no eechee)

1 - その ^{はこ}箱 の ^{みぎ}右 の ^{ちやわん}茶碗 は
so no hako no migi no chawan wa
(sono hahko no meegee no chahwan wah)

いくら です か。
i ku ra de su ka.
(eekoorah dés' kah)

2 - これ です か。
ko re de su ka.
(koré dés' kah)

3 - いいえ、その ^{ひだり}左 の ^{ちやわん}茶碗 です。
i i e, so no hidari no cha wan de su.
(ee-é sono heedahree no chahwan dés')

- ④ I'll telephone right away.
 denwa o
- ⑤ Yes, please.
 hai

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - san ni denwa o -. ② - wa nichiyōbi -. ③ - no tame ni - motte -.
 ④ sugu - kakemasu. ⑤ - onegai shimasu.

Lesson Seventeen *(-th / ten-seven / lesson)* 17

The Flea Market *(flea / [relation] / market)*

- 1 - How much is that teacup to the right of the box?
(that / box / [relation] / right / [relation] / teacup / [announce] / how much / it is / [question])
- 2 - This one?
(this one / it is / [question])
- 3 - No, the teacup, on the left.
(no / that one / left / [relation] / teacup / it is)



4- ええ と… これ は ^{さん}三 ^{まん}万 ^{えん}円
 e e to... ko re wa san man en
 (é- to koré wah san man én)

です。①

de su.

dés')

5- ^{さん}三 ^{まん}万 ^{えん}円 ですか。 ^{たか}高い です
 san man en de su ka. taka i de su
 (san man én dés' kah) (tahkahee dés')

ね。

ne.

né)

6- あ、ごめん なさい。 ^{さん}三 ^{ぜん}千 ^{えん}円
 a, go me n na sa i. san zen en
 (ah gomen nahsai) (san zen en)

です。

de su.

dés')

7- ちょっと ^み見せて ^{くだ}下さい。
 cho t to mi se te kuda sa i.
 (cho'to meesété koodahsai)

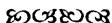
8- はい、どうぞ。

ha i, dō zo.

(hai do-zo)

9- ^{ふる}古い もの ですか。
 furu i mo no de su ka.
 (foorooee mono dés' kah)

- 4 – Uhh... it's 30,000 yen.
(*uhh*) (*that* / [*announce*] / *three-10,000-yen* / *it is*)
- 5 – 30,000 yen! That's expensive!
(*three-10,000-yen* / *it is* / [*question*]) (*be expensive* / *it is* / [*agreement*])
- 6 – Oh, sorry! It's 3,000 yen.
(*oh* / *sorry*) (*three-1,000-yen* / *it is*)
- 7 – Show it to me for a bit.
(*a bit* / *please show*)
- 8 – Yes. Here.
- 9 – Is it old?
(*be ancient* / *thing* / *it is* / [*question*])



Notes

- ① A 万 ^{マン} *man* (*man*) is a unit with four zeros: 1,0000 (= 10,000) that the Japanese employ on a daily basis, for example to indicate price. While the western counting system is based on thousand, the Asian system is based on ten-thousand. That is, while we say “ten, hundred, thousand, ten thousand, hundred thousand”, the Japanese say *ten*, 十 ^{ジュウ} *jū*; *hundred*, 百 ^{ヒャク} *hyaku*; *thousand*, 千 ^{セン} *sen*; *ten-thousand*, 万 ^{マン} *man*; *ten ten-thousand*, 十万 ^{ジュウマン} *jū man*. While it takes a bit of getting used to, the Japanese method is just as simple as the Western style; you might want to imagine placing the comma after four zeros, instead of just after three, to help you visualize it better.

10 - そう ですよ。江戸時代
 sō de su yo. e do ji dai
 (so- dés' yo) (édo jeedai)

の もの です。②③
 no mo no de su.
 no mono dés')

11 - ではこれをください。はい
 de wa ko re o kuda sa i. ha i
 (dévah koré o koodahsai) (hai)

三千円。
 san zen en.
 san zen en)

12 - どうもありがとうございます。
 dō mo a ri ga tō go za i masu.
 (do-mo ahreegahto- gozaheemahs')

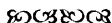
13 - あれ。茶碗の裏に「Made
 a re. cha wan no ura ni "Made
 (ahre) (chahwan no oora nee "Made

In Hong Kong] と書いてある。
 In Hong Kong" to ka i te a ru.
 In Hong Kong" to kaheeté ahroo)

やられた。④
 ya ra re ta.
 (yahrahrétah)

□

- 10 – Oh, yes! It's from the Edo era.
(so / it is / [engagement]) (Edo-era / [relation] / thing / it is)
- 11 – Well, then I'll take it. Here's 3,000 yen.
(well / this / [object] / give) (yes / three-1,000-yen)
- 12 – Thank you very much.
- 13 – (alone) What?! On the bottom of teacup it says
 "Made In Hong Kong"! I've been had!
*(what?!) (teacup / [relation] / bottom / [place] / "Made In
 Hong Kong" / [quotation] / be written) (have been done)*



Notes

- ② cf. Lesson 14, revision and notes, paragraph 4.
- ③ In Japan, historical time is counted by historical epoch or period. The Edo era ran from 1603 to 1867. It was a period of peace, where Japan closed communication with the outside world. They created a modern society under a new economic and technological plan, and in the already very populous cities, developed all forms of art. Edo is also the ancient name for Tōkyō when the capitol of the country was in Kyōto.
- ④ Up until now, we have always seen the verb form that ends in **ます masu (mahs')** and its derivatives. ある **aru (ahroo)** is the exact equivalent of **あります arimasu (ahreemahs')**, which we have seen so often. Similarly, the following **やられた yarareta (yahrahrétah)** is the equivalent of **やられました yararemashita (yahrahrémahshtah)**, which is much more familiar to us. Why these differences? We will get to that in the revision chapter. For the moment, it is enough just to recognize them.

Don't forget: the key, for the moment, is understanding. From time to time, certain expressions will appear difficult. Don't let it worry you. They will be explained in greater detail later on... Everything will be covered! As they say in Japan: "You can't make flowers grow by pulling on them!" Be patient!

Exercise 1

- ① この ^{さかな}魚 は ^{たか}高い ですね。
kono sakana wa takai desu ne.
(kono sahkanah wah tahkai dés' né)
- ② ちょっと ^ま待って ^{くだ}下さい。
chotto matte kudasai.
(cho'to mah'te koodahsai)
- ③ ^{きっさてん}喫茶店 は ^{ひだり}すぐ ^{ひだり}左 に あります。
kissaten wa sugu hidari ni arimasu.
(kee'sahten wah soogoo heedahree nee ahreemahs')

Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば}言葉 を ^い入れ ない

- ① How much is it?
.....
- ② It's 20,000 yen.
... en desu
- ③ It's on the right.
... ni arimasu

- ④ ^{みぎ}右の^{ほん}本を^み見せて^{くだ}下さい。
 mi-gi no hon o mi-sete ku-da-sai.
 (mee-gee no hon o mee-sé-té koo-da-hsai)
- ⑤ カメラ^や屋はデパートの^{うら}裏に
 ka-me-ra ya wa de-pā-to no ura ni
 (ka-hmé-ra-hyah wah dé-pah-to no oorah nee
 あります。
 a-ri-ma-su.
 ah-reemahs')

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① This fish is expensive! ② Wait just a moment, please. ③ The café is immediately to your left. ④ Show me the book on the right, please. ⑤ The camera shop is located behind the department store.

- ④ It's on the left.
 arimasu
- ⑤ The teacup on the right, please.
 chawan

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① ikura desu ka. ② ni man -. ③ mi-gi -. ④ hi-dari ni -. ⑤ mi-gi no
 - o ku-da-sai.

18 ^{だいじゅうはつか} 第十八課
dai jū hak ka (dai ju- hah'kah)

^{ほんや}
本屋
hon ya
(hon yah)

- 1 - いらっしやいませ。①
i ra s sha i ma se.
(eerah'shaheemahsé)
- 2 - トルストイ の 「^{せんそう}戦争 と
to ru su to i no sen sō to
(toroosotoee no senso- to
^{へいわ}平和」 は あります か。
hei wa wa a ri ma su ka.
(hé-wah wah ahreemahs' kah)
- 3 - 「^{せんそう}戦争 と ^{へいわ}平和」 です か。
sen sō to hei wa de su ka.
(senso- to hé-wah dés' kah)
- 4 - はい、あります。
ha i, a ri masu.
(hai ahreemahs')
- 5 - しょうしょう お ^ま待ち ^{くだ}下さい。
shō shō o ma chi kuda sa i.
(sho-sho- o mahchee koodahsai)

Notes

① cf. Lesson 12, note 2. The method for greeting a customer.

Lesson Eighteen (-th / ten-eight / lesson) 18

At the bookstore (bookstore)

- 1 – Greetings!
(enter)
- 2 – Do you have Tolstoy's *War and Peace*?
(Tolstoy / [relation] / war / and / peace / [announce] / exist / [question])
- 3 – *War and Peace*?
(war / and / peace / it is / [question])
- 4 Yes, I have it.
(yes / exist)
- 5 Please wait a moment.
(a bit / please wait)

実 是 留 守

実は今家内が留守です。



- 6- それから ^{りょうり}料理 の ^{ほん}本 を
 so re ka ra ryō ri no hon o
 (sorékahrah ryo-ree no hon o
^み見せて ^{くだ}下さい。
 mi se te kuda sa i.
 meesété koodahsai)
- 7- 日本 ^{にほん}料理 ^{りょうり}です か、フランス
 nihon ryō ri de su ka, fu ra n su
 (neehon ryo-ree dés' kah fooransoo
^{りょうり}料理 ^{ちゅうか}です か、^{りょうり}中華 ^{りょうり}料理
 ryō ri de su ka, chū ka ryō ri
 ryo-ree dés' kah chu-kah ryo-ree
 です か。②③
 de su ka.
 dés' kah)
- 8- 実 ^{じつ}は ^{いま}今 ^{かない}家内 ^{るす}が 留守 ^{るす}です。④
 jitsu wa ima ka nai ga ru su de su.
 (jeetsoo wah eemah kanai gah roosoo dés')
- 9 自分 ^{じぶん}で ^{りょうり}料理 ^{りょうり}を ^{りょうり}しなければ
 ji bun de ryō ri o shi na ke re ba
 (jeeboon dé ryo-ree o sheenahkérebah
 なりません。
 na ri ma se n.
 nahreemahsen)
- 10- それでは ^{ほん}この ^{ほん}本 ^{ほん}を ^{ほん}おすす ^{ほん}め
 so re de wa ko no hon o o su su me
 (sorédéwah kono hon o osoosomé
 します。
 shi ma su.
 sheemahs')

- 6 – And then, could you show me a cookbook?
(*and then / cooking / [relation] / book / [object] / please show*)
- 7 – Japanese cuisine, French cuisine, Chinese cuisine?
(*Japan-cooking / it is / [question] / France-cooking / it is / [question] / Chinese-cooking / it is / [question]*)
- 8 – It's just that my wife is away.
(*actually / [emphasis] / now / my wife / [subject] / absence / it is*)
- 9 – I have to do the cooking myself.
(*oneself / [means] / cooking / [object] / I must do*)
- 10 – In that case, I recommend this book.
(*in that case / this / book / [object] / [polite]-recommendation-do*)



Notes

- ② In 日本料理 **nihon ryōri** (*neehonryo-ree*) and フランス料理 **furansu ryōri** (*fooransoo ryo-ree*), 日本 **nihon** (*neehohn*) and フランス **furansu** (*fooransoo*) are indeed the names for Japan and France, respectively. But for 中華料理 **chūka ryōri** (*chu-kah ryo-ree*), the 中華 **chūka** (*chu-kah*) cannot be used separately. To refer to the country China, we use another word: 中国 **chūgoku** (*chu-gokoo*).
- ③ In English we can say “Is it this **or** that?”, “Is it like this **or** like that?”. In Japanese, we have to repeat the entire phrase, adding **です か** *desu ka* (*dés' kah*) each time. It's like saying “Is it like this or is it like that?”.
- ④ 家内 **kanai** (*kanai*): *my wife*. This term cannot be used to speak of anyone else's wife. It's the same situation as in Lesson 15 (cf. Lesson 15, notes 1 and 3).

11 実^{じつ} は 私^{わたくし} も これ で
 jitsu wa watakushi mo ko re de
 (jeetsoo wah wahtahkooshee mo koré dé)

作^{つく}ります。

tsuku ri ma su.
 (tsookooreemahs')

12 簡^{かん}単^{たん} に でき^{でき}ます。

kan tan ni de ki ma su.
 (kantan nee dékeemahs')

13 - それ^{それ}では これ^{これ} に しま^{しま}す。

so re dewa ko re ni shi ma su.
 (sorédéwah koré nee sheemahs')

14 - 毎^{まい}度^ど あり^{あり}がとう ござ^{ござ}います。⑤

maido a ri ga tō go za i ma su.
 (maido ahreegahto- gozaheemahs') □

れん しゅう
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

① 家^か内^{ない} です。

kanai desu.
 (kanai dés')

② 今^{いま} 山^{やま}田^だ さ^{さん}ん は 留^る守^す です。

ima yamada san wa rusu desu.
 (eemah yahmahdah san wah roosoo dés')

③ これ^{これ} は 魚^{さかな} です か、肉^{にく} です か。

kore wa sakana desu ka, niku desu ka.
 (koré wah sahkanah dés' kah neekoo dés' kah)

- 11 In fact, I use this myself.
(*in fact / [emphasis] / me / also / this / [means] / make*)
- 12 It's really very easy.
(*easy / [adverbial] / be possible*)
- 13 – Well then I'll take it.
(*well / this / [goal] / do*)
- 14 – Thank you very much.



Notes

- ⑤ When we have a scene that takes place in a store, we will find phrases usually employed by salespeople, generally reserved for their use only. **ありがとう ございます arigatō gozaimasu** (*ahreegahto- gozaheemahs'*) is one of the ways to say *thank you*. But **毎度 ありがとう ございます maido arigatō gozaimasu** (*maido ahreegahto- gozaheemahs'*) literally means: "For every time (that you come here), thank you", and is a phrase exclusively used by salespeople. It is not for you, unless you work in a store in Japan!



- ④ お菓子^{かし}を自分^{じぶん}で作^{つく}ります。
o kashi o jibun de tsukurimasu.
(*o kahshee o jeeboon dé tsookooreemahs'*)
- ⑤ 映画^{えいが}の本^{ほん}を見^みせて下^{くだ}さい。
eiga no hon o misete kudasai.
(*é-gah no hon o meesété koodahsai*)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① This is my wife. ② Mr. Yamada is away right now. ③ Is this fish or meat? ④ I make my own cakes myself. ⑤ Please show me a book on the movies.

19 Exercise 2

...に ^{ことば}言葉 を ^い入れなさい

- ① Is that a boy or a girl?
otoko no ko onna no ko
- ② I'll take this book.
. . . . hon
- ③ Me too, my wife is also away.
watakushi ga rusu desu

19 ^{だいじゅうきゅうか}第十九課 dai jū kyū ka (dai ju-kyu-kah)

コンサート

ko n sā to
(kon sah-to)

1 - この ^{ひと}うつくしい 人 は だれ
ko no u tsu ku shi i hito wa da re
(kono ootsookooshee-h'to wah dahré)

です か。
de su ka.
(dés' kah)

2 - この ^{しやしん}写真 の ^{ひと}人 です か。
ko no sha shin no hito de su ka.
(kono shahsheen no h'to dés' kah)

- ④ Have you got *War and Peace*?
「sensō to heiwa」 ka
- ⑤ Is this *War and Peace*?
「sensō to heiwa」 ka

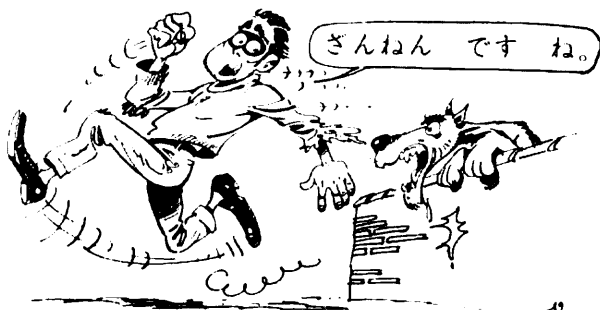
Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - desu ka - desu ka. ② kono - ni shimasu. ③ - mo kanai -. ④ - wa arimasu -. ⑤ - desu -.

Lesson Nineteen (-th / ten-nine / lesson) 19

The Concert (concert)

- 1 - Who is this beautiful person?
(this / be beautiful / person / [announce] / who / it is / [question])
- 2 - The young woman in the photo?
(this / photo / [relation] / person / it is / [question])



- 19 3- はい、そう です。
 ha i, sō de su.
 (hai so-dés')
- 4- 山口 文子 です。①
 yamaguchi fumi ko de su.
 (yahmahgoochee foomeeko dés')
- 5- 女優 です か。
 jo yū de su ka.
 (joyu-dés' kah)
- 6- いいえ、女優 ではありません。
 i i e, jo yū de wa a ri ma se n.
 (ee-é joyu-dé wah ahreemahsen)
- 歌手 です。②
 ka shu de su.
 (kahshoo dés')
- 7- どんな 歌 を 歌います か。
 do n na uta o uta i ma su ka.
 (do'nah ootah o ootah ee mahs' kah)
- 8- ジャズ です。
 ja zu de su.
 (jazoo dés')
- 9- こんど の 土曜日 に サン・
 ko n do no do yō bi ni sa n
 (kondo no doyo-bee nee san)
- プラザでコンサートがあります。
 pu ra za de ko n sā to ga a ri masu.
 (p'rahzah dé konsah-to gah ahreemahs')
- 一緒にいかがですか。③
 is sho ni i ka ga de su ka.
 (ee'sho- nee eekahgah dés' kah)

- 3 – Yes, that's right.
- 4 – That's Yamaguchi Fumiko.
(*Yamaguchi / Fumiko / it is*)
- 5 – Is she an actress?
(*actress / it is / [question]*)
- 6 – No, she's not an actress. She's a singer.
(*no / actress / isn't (singer / it is)*)
- 7 – What kind of music does she sing?
(*what kind of / song / [object] / sing / [question]*)
- 8 – Jazz.
(*jazz / it is*)
- 9 – Next Saturday she's having a concert at San Plaza. Shall we go together?
(*next time / [relation] / Saturday / [time] / San Plaza / [place] / concert / [subject] / exist (together / [adverbial] / how / it is / [question])*)



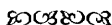
Notes

- ① The only instant the name of a person is not followed by **さん san (san)** is when it is the name of a celebrity or well-known person. Just as in English we would never say "Mister William Shakespeare", in Japanese you don't need the **さん san**. And remember, the last name **always** goes first in Japanese, given name second.
- ② **ではありません de wa arimasen (dé wah ahreemahsen)**. It's a bit long, but it's nothing more than the negative equivalent of **です desu (dés)**. **です desu: it is; ではありません de wa arimaen: it isn't.**
- ③ **サン・プラザ san puraza (san p'rah zah)**, *San Plaza*, a popular concert hall, is located in Nakano, one of the western districts of Tōkyō.

- 19 10 - とても ざんねん です が、
 to te mo za n ne n de su ga,
 (totémo za'nen dés'gah
 都合 ^{つごう} が わるい です。
 tsu gō ga wa ru i de su.
 tsoogo-gah wahrooee dés')
- 11 - ざんねん です ね。 写真 ^{しゃしん} より
 za n ne n de su ne. sha shin yo ri
 (za'nen dés'né) (shahsheen yoree
 もっと うつくしい ^{ひと} 人 です よ。
 mo t to u tsuku shi i hito de su yo.
 mo'to ootsookooshee- h'to dés'yo)
- 12 - ほんとう? ^{やくそく} 約束 を やめよう
 ho n tō? yaku soku o ya me yō
 (honto-) (yahkoosokoo o yahméyo-
 か な。 でも それ は むり
 ka na. demo so re wa mu ri
 kah nah) (démo soré wah mooree
 だ なあ。 ④⑤
 da na a.
 dah nah-)
- 13 - それでは また この ^{つぎ} 次 の
 so re dewa ma ta ko no tsugi no
 (sorédéwah mahtah kono tsoogee no
 機会 ^{きかい} に お 誘い ^{さそ} しましょう。
 ki kai ni o saso i shi ma shō.
 keekai nee o sahsoe sheemahsho-)
- 14 - ぜひ おねがい します。
 ze hi o ne ga i shi masu.
 (zéhee onégahee sheemahs')

□

- 10 – It's really too bad, but I can't go.
(very / too bad / it is / but / convenience / [subject] / be bad / it is)
- 11 – That's too bad. She's more beautiful in person than in the photo!
(too bad / it is / [agreement]) (photo / more than / much more / be ravishing / person / it is / [engagement])
- 12 – Really? I wonder if I should cancel my plans...
 But no, I guess I can't.
*(really) (promise / [object] / let's quit / [question] / [reflection])
 (but / that / [announce] / impossible / it is / [reflection])*
- 13 – Well, then I'll just take you next time.
(well / anew / this / next / [relation] / occasion / [time] / [polite]-invite-do)
- 14 – Oh, yes, please!
(absolutely / please)



Notes

- ④ やめよう *yameyō (yahméyo-)*. Until now, all verbs translated as “let’s go” or “let’s eat”, etc., have ended in ましょう *mashō (mahsho-)*. Here is another form to say the same thing. Likewise *だ da (dah)* is another way of saying *です desu*, and means exactly the same thing. We’ll soon get to a full explanation of these forms... just a bit of suspense, until paragraph 4 of Lesson 21.
- ⑤ Remember those little words we find at the end of sentences, those final particles that give a certain nuance to what has just been said? We have seen *ね ne (né)* (Lesson 1, note 4), and then we saw *よ yo (yo)*, (Lesson 2, note 3). And now, here is *な na (nah)*, which you will use very often when speaking to yourself, or when you are thinking out loud. In the word-for-word translation, we note it with a [reflection].

Exercise 1

- ① ビールはいかがですか。
bīru wa ikaga desu ka.
(bee-roo wah eekahgah dés' kah)
- ② 今度の日曜日にどこへ行きますか。
kondo no nichiyōbi ni doko e ikimasu ka.
(kondo no neecheeyo-bee nee doko é eekeemahs' kah)
- ③ どんな映画が好きですか。
donna eiga ga suki desu ka.
(do'nah é-gah gah sookee dés' kah)

Exercise 2

...に ^{ことば}言葉 ^いを ^い入れなさい

- ① Is today Saturday or Sunday?
... wa desu ka, desu ka
- ② What kind of person is that?
..... desu ka
- ③ Who is this person?
kono wa desu ka
- ④ That's not a café, that's a bookstore.
kissaten, desu

- ① 私^{わたくし} は 都合^{つごう} が いい です。
 watakushi wa tsugō ga ii desu.
 (wahtahkooshee wah tsoogo-gah ee-dés')
- ⑤ 昨日^{きのう} より 暑い^{あつ} です ね。
 kinō yori atsui desu ne.
 (keeno-yoree ahtsooee dés'né)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① How would you like a beer? ② Where are you going next Sunday?
 ③ What sort of movies do you like? ④ That's a convenient time for me.
 ⑤ It's hotter than yesterday.

- ⑤ The soap-operas are more amusing than the news.
 hōmu-dorama wa nyūshu
 desu

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① kyō - doyōbi -, nichiyōbi -, ② donna hito -, ③ - hito - dare -,
 ④ - de wa arimasen, honya -, ⑤ - yori omoshiroi -.

きん えん

禁煙

kin en

(keenen)

1- この 辺 に タバコ屋 が
 ko no hen ni ta ba ko ya ga
 (kono hen nee tahbahkoyah gah)

あります か。
 a ri ma su ka.
 ahreemahs' kah)

2- あります。
 a ri masu.
 (ahreemahs')

3- 遠い ですか。
 too i de su ka.
 (to-ee dés' kah)

4- いいえ、そんな に 遠く
 i i e, so n na ni too ku
 (ee-é sonnah nee to-koo)

ありません。①
 a ri ma se n.
 ahreemahsen)

5- どこ ですか。
 do ko de su ka.
 (doko dés' kah)

No Smoking

- 1 – Is there a tobacco shop nearby?
(*this / area / [place] / tobacco shop / [subject] / exist / [question]*)
- 2 – Yes.
(*exist*)
- 3 – Is it far?
(*be far / it is / [question]*)
- 4 – No, not very.
(*no / so / [adverbial] / not be far*)
- 5 – Where is it?
(*where / it is / [question]*)



Notes

- ① 遠い *tooi* (*to-ee*), *to be far*; 遠く *tooku* *arimasen* (*to-koo ahreemahs*), *not to be far*. Yes, you have probably already figured it out. To negate an adjective, you replace the final い *i* (*ee*) with a く *ku* (*ku*) and add *arimasen* (*ahreemahsen*). Try it with 古い *furui* (*foorooee*), *old*, *ancient*, which we have seen in Lesson 17, item 9. *Not old* is... 古く *furuku* *arimasen* (*foorookoo ahreemahsen*). Well done!

- 6 - ^{ほん や}本屋 ^{となり}の 隣 です。
 hon ya no tonari de su.
 (honyah no tonahree dés')
- 7 まず ^{みち}この 道 を まっすぐ
 ma zu ko no michi o ma s su gu
 (mahzoo kono meechee o mah'soogoo
 いきます。②
 i ki ma su.
 eekeemahs')
- 8 それから ^{ひだり}左 に まがります。
 so re ka ra hidari ni ma ga ri ma su.
 (sorékahrah heedahree nee mahgahreemahs')
- 9 ^{みぎがわ}右側 ^{おお}に ^{ほん や}大きい 本屋 が
 migigawa ni oo ki i hon ya ga
 (meegeegahwah nee o-kee- hohnyah gah
 あります。
 a ri masu.
 ahreemahs')
- 10 その ^{となり}隣 です。
 so no tonari de su.
 (sono tonahree dés')
- 11 - ありがとう ございます。
 a ri ga tō go za i ma su.
 (ahreegahto- gozaheemahs')
- たすかりました。
 ta su ka ri mashi ta.
 (tahsookahreemahsheetah)

- 6 – Next to the bookstore.
(bookstore / [relation] / neighbor / it is)
- 7 First you take this road, straight ahead.
(first / this / road / [object] / straight ahead / go)
- 8 Then turn left.
(then / left / [place] / turn)
- 9 On the right there is a large bookstore.
(right side / [place] / be big / bookstore / [subject] / exist)
- 10 It's right next-door.
(of this / neighbor / it is)
- 11 – Thank you. I am saved!



Notes

- ② It may seem a bit strange to find that in Japanese, you say “go a road” 道を行きます *michi o ikimasu* (*meechee o eekee-mahs*), in stead of go ‘on’ or ‘by’ a road. It is not that odd, however, if you think about how we say “take this road,” or “walk the plank,” where we use the same kind of construction.

12 ^{みつ} 三日 ^{まえ} 前 から ^{きんえん} 禁煙 して いました
 mik ka mae ka ra kin en shi te i ma shi ta
 (mee'kah mahé kahrah keenen sheeté eemahshtah)

が、^{つづ} 続 けません でした。
 ga, tsuzu ki ma se n de shi ta.
 (gah tsoozookeemahsen déshtah)

13 - つらい ですね。 ^{ぼく} 僕 も ^{きんえん} 禁煙
 tsu ra i de su ne. boku mo kin en
 (tsoorai dés' né) (bokoo mo keenen)

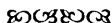
して います が、タバコ が
 shi te i ma su ga, ta ba ko ga
 shté eemahs'gah tabahko gah

すいたい な。③④
 su i ta i na.
 sooeetai nah)

14 - それでは ^{いっしょ} 一緒 に ^や タバコ屋 へ
 so re dewa is sho ni ta ba ko ya e
 (sorédéwah ee'sho nee tahbahkoyah é)

行きましよう。
 i ki ma shō.
 eekeemahsho-) □

- 12 I quit smoking three days ago, but I didn't stick to it.
(three days-before / since / quitting smoking-was doing / but / didn't continue)
- 13 – Yes, it's hard. I quit smoking, too, but... I want a cigarette!
(be painful / it is / [agreement]) (I / too / quitting smoking-be doing / but / cigarette / [subject] / be object of desire of smoking / [reflection])
- 14 – Well then let's go to the tobacco shop together!
(then / together / [adverbial] / tobacco shop / [destination] / let's go)



Notes

- ③ In English, when we speak of ourselves, we have “I / me / myself” and that's it. In Japanese, as you have no doubt noticed, these words are not used very often. Moreover, there are more ways of saying “I / me”. We have already seen, for instance, 私 ^{わたくし} **watakushi** (*wahtahkooshee*) (Lesson 9, item 4; Lesson 12, item 6; Lesson 18, item 11). 私 ^{わたくし} **watakushi** can be used by both men and women, but 僕 ^{ぼく} **boku** (*bokoo*), which we have here, can **only be used by men**. It's also quite informal, usually used among men, in a casual situation.
- ④ タバコ **tabako** (*tahbahko*) obviously comes from our word “tobacco”, but be careful, because タバコ **tabako** (*tahbahko*) actually means *cigarette*.



Exercise 1

- ① ^{いま} ^{なに} 今何をしていますか。
 ima nani o shite imasu ka.
 (eemah nanee o sheeté eemahs' kah)
- ② ^に ^{じゅう} ^{ねん} ^{まえ} 二十年前から ^{とうきょう} ^す 東京に住んでいます。
 ni jū nen mae kara tōkyō ni sunde imasu.
 (nee ju- nen mahé kahrah to-kyo- nee soondé eemahs')
- ③ ^{たなか} ^ま 田中さんを待っています、^き 来ません。
 tanaka san o matte imasu ga, kimasen.
 (tanahkah san o mah'te eemahs' gah keemahsen)

Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば} 言葉 を ^い 入れなさい

- ① That's not fun.
 omoshiro
- ② I'm having my breakfast.
 chōshoku o tabe
- ③ It's a big bookstore.

- ④ I've worked in this store for 8 years.
 kono mise de hataraitte
 imasu

21 第二十一課

dai ni jū ikka (dai nee ju- ee'kah)

まとめ
matome

Revision and Notes

A little break will always do us good! As we all know, the difficult thing is not to begin, but to continue. And to continue, we have to be certain we have a strong foundation. These revision and notes chapters are here for that purpose, so read them carefully and attentively. It is probably a good idea to take a little time and go back to some of the notes and sentence patterns we mentioned in the revision chapters. That is how you can be sure of your pursuit of excellence in Japanese.

1. By now you should already be pretty familiar with the syllabic writing system, at least for the *hiragana*. So we will begin this lesson with a bit of discussion on the Chinese characters, which in Japanese we call *kanji*, which is literally: 漢 **kan** = *Chinese* and 字 **ji** = *character*. You were warned, at the beginning, that these would be a little tough, and by now you can tell you haven't been tricked! But little by little we will take apart all the mystery.

What are not complicated are the nouns. Of course, for each noun, there is one (or often two) different *kanji* (the most common first). Let's take a look at the first nouns we met in Lesson 17:

- *Box*, pronounced **hako**, is written 箱^{はこ}; inversely, the character 箱 means *box* and is pronounced, in Japanese, **hako**.
- *Right* is pronounced **migi** (*meegee*) and written 右^{みぎ}; or we could say that 右 means *right* and is pronounced **migi**.

Lesson Twenty-One (-th / two-ten-one / lesson) 21

There, those are the most simple: one character for one word. But now take the words that show up in Lesson 18. We will find a lot of compound words in *kanji*, but the principle is the same:

- *War* is pronounced **sensō** (*senso-*) and written 戦争; the first character is pronounced **sen** (*sen*), the second, **sō** (*so-*).
- *Peace* is pronounced **heiwa** (*hé-wah*) and written 平和; the first character is pronounced **hei** (*he-*), the second, **wa** (*wah*).

Take a look at some of the other nouns from Lesson 18: the title, 本屋 **honya** and 料理 **ryōri** (item 6), 家内 **kanai** and 留守 **rusu** (item 8), and 自分 **jibun** (item 9). They are all composed in the same fashion. And that is the most frequent usage: two characters for one word, though sometimes even more... We have already seen one word written with three *kanji*: 喫茶店 **kissaten**. The first *kanji*, 喫 means *to drink*, the second 茶 *tea*, and the third 店 *store*. So 喫茶店 **kissaten** is a *café*. But look at the last character, 店. Here, in a compound word, it's pronounced **ten** (*ten*). Now look back at Lesson 6, item 10, and you will find the same character. But it is pronounced **mise** (*méesé*). You will remember what we discussed in the introduction, that it is a given for Japanese that most characters have more than one pronunciation. In general, the pronunciation of a character will only change depending on whether it is used alone or as a part of a compound word. The character 店 is pronounced **ten** when part of a compound word, but **mise** when standing alone. But don't panic! It is much more simple than it seems. And never forget, what is most important right now is just **to understand**. And if you are attentive, you will always notice when the same character is pronounced differently. And now you have the explanation.

21 2. Adjectives. Now that we are beginning to be introduced to longer sentences, we are finding words that are very much like our adjectives, but not exactly. These words can take different forms—for instance the negative form (cf. lesson 20, note 1). You can negate an adjective easily by dropping the final *i* and adding く **ありません** **ku arimasen** (*koo ahreemahsen*). The only adjective you have to pay special attention to is いい **ii**, *to be good*. It has a twin, よい **yoi** (*yoee*), which means the same thing, but it is on this twin that we make the negative: よく **ありません** **yoku arimasen** (*yokoo ahreemahsen*). Fortunately, Japanese is like English in that the adjective always comes before the noun:

- An ancient thing: 古い ^{ふるい} **もの** **furui mono** (*foorooee mono*)
furui = *be ancient*; **mono** = *thing* (cf. Lesson 17, item 9)
- A large bookstore: 大きい ^{おおきい} **本屋** **ookii honya** (*o-kee- honyah*)
ookii = *large*; **honya** = *bookstore*
- A beautiful woman: うつくしい ^{うつくしい} **人** **utsukushii hito** (*ootsoo-kooshee- h'to*)
utstukushi = *beautiful*; **hito** = *person* (cf. Lesson 19, item 1 and Lesson 16, item 6)

3. Particles. In the last cycle of chapters we have come across two new particles: は **wa** (*wah*) and より **yori** (*yoree*). And guess what? They are the last two!

より **yori** is used only when one is making a comparison such as “more... than” (cf. Lesson 19, item 11). As for は **wa**, it is one of the keystones of the Japanese sentence, and we will see it often. Best thing to do is go back every once in a while and re-read the explanation in Lesson 15, note 2.

4. Verbs. Let's go back for a moment to the verb forms used in Lesson 17, item 13, and in Lesson 19, item 12. They are different from those we have seen earlier, or which end in **ます masu**, **ません masen**, **ました mashita**, or **ましよう mashō** (cf. Lesson 7, paragraph 1). You have surely seen by now that Japanese verbs

121 • hyaku ni jū ichi

change based on the position of the speaker, in three degrees of 'politeness', low, middle and high.

The middle degree is what we have been studying up until now, as it is the most common: a conversation with someone you know rather well, but with whom you have never been particularly close or intimate, or else with someone you are meeting for the first time, but who is, so to speak, "your equal". The middle degree is characterized by **です desu** to say *it is* and by verb forms ending in **ます masu**, **ません masen**, **ました mashita**, and **ましょう mashō**.

We will discuss the high degree in lessons to come. We use it in cases where you need to show your high respect, or even deference.

Low degree is what we came across in Lesson 17, item 3, and in Lesson 19, item 12. It is how we show that we are speaking with someone familiar: an old friend, a member of the family... and of course, we use it when talking to ourselves. For the low degree, instead of **です desu** we say **だ da** to mean *it is*. In place of the ending **ます masu**, we use the most neutral form of the verb, the one you will find in Japanese dictionaries. For instance, here for **あります arimasu**, which we know well, it would be **ある aru** (*ahroo*). For the past, when in place of the ending **ました mashita**, it only needs to be **た ta**.

Examples:

Middle Degree: **やられました yararemashita**

Low Degree: **やられた yarareta**

With exactly the same meaning: "I've been had" or "I've been taken". Where in the middle degree we find **ましょう mashō**, such as **やめましょう yamemashō**, *let's give up*, we find here for low degree **やめよう yameyō**.

This system might seem a little bit strange! It is indeed very different from what happens with our verbs in English! But don't worry about it. Don't forget: for the moment, just worry about UNDERSTANDING, and recognizing the differences, seeing "how it works". We will discover easily enough how all verbs fit with their given situations. Just remember to pay attention to the notes where we indicate change of degree (whether higher or lower) and all will go well!

22 第二十二課

dai ni jū ni ka (dai nee ju- nee kah)

ゆう びん きょく
郵便局

yū bin kyoku
(yu- been kyo ku)

- 1- 郵便局はどこにありますか。
yū binkyoku wa doko ni a ri masu ka.
(yu-beenkyokoo wah doko nee ahreemahs' kah)
- 2- すぐ後ろにあります。
su gu ushiro ni a ri masu.
(soogoo usheero nee ahreemahs')
- 3- あ。これは、どうもありがとうございます。
a. ko re wa, dō mo a ri ga tō.
(ah) (koré wah do-mo ahreegahto-)
- 4- ギリシャへの航空郵便葉書
gi ri sha e no kōkū yūbin hagaki
(geereeshah é no ko-ku- yu-been hahgahkee
の料金はいくらですか。
no ryōkin wa i ku ra de su ka.
(no ryo-keen wah eekoorah dés' kah)
- 5- イギリスまでですか。
i gi ri su ma de de su ka.
(eegeereesoo mahd é dés' kah)

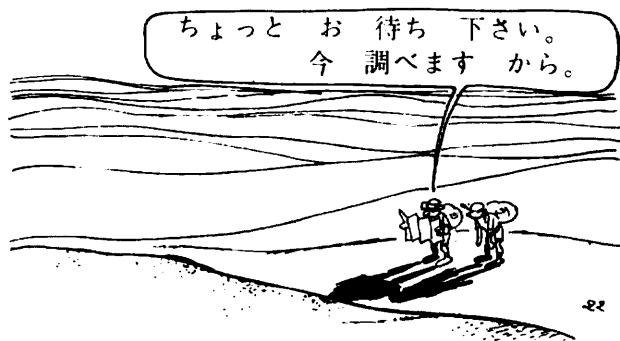
Lesson Twenty-Two 22

At the Post-Office

(Post Office)

- 1 - Where can I find the post-office?
(post-office / [announce] / where / [place] / exist / [question])
- 2 - Just behind you.
(just / behind / [place] / exist)
- 3 - Oh! Thank you very much.
(oh) (this / [announce] / thank you very much)
- 4 - What is the price for one air-mail letter to Greece?
(Greece / [destination] / [relation] / air-mail-postcard / [relation] / price / [announce] / how much / it is / [question])
- 5 - To England?
(England / until / it is / [question])

待合室



22 6- いいえ。イギリス まで で は
i i e i gi ri su ma de de wa
(ee-é) (eegereesoo mahdé dé wah)

ありません。①

a ri ma se n.
ahreemahsen)

7 ギリシャ まで です。

gi ri sha ma de de su.
(geereeshah mahdé dés')

8- ああ。ギリシャ です か。

a a. gi ri sha de su ka.
(ah-) (geereeshah dés' kah)

ちよつと お 待^まち 下^{くだ}さい。

cho t to o ma chi kuda sa i.
(cho'to o mahchee koodahsai)

9 今^{いま} 調^{しら}べます から。②

ima shira bema su ka ra.
(eemah sheerahbémahs' kahrah)

10 はい、ありました。ギリシャ

ha i, a ri mashi ta. gi ri sha
(hai ahreemahshtah geereeshah

まで は、葉書^{はがき} 一^{いち} 枚^{まい}、

ma de wa. ha gaki ichi mai,
mahdé wah hahgahkee eechee mai

百^{ひやく} 十^{じゅう} 円^{えん} です。③

hyaku jū en de su.
hyahkoo ju- en dés')

- 6 – No. Not to England.
(no) (England / until / it is not)
- 7 To Greece.
(Greece / until / it is)
- 8 – Oh. To Greece? Wait just a minute, please.
(oh) (Greece / it is / [question]) (a little / [polite]-please wait)
- 9 Let me take a look.
(now / look up / because)
- 10 Ah, here it is. One postcard, to Greece, that's
110 yen.
(yes / exist) (Greece / until / [emphasis] / postcard / one-sheet / 100-10-yen / it is)

練習問題

Notes

- ① では ありません *de wa arimasen* (*dé wah ahreemah-sen*) is the negative form of です *desu* (*dés*) in middle degree. Thus, it means: *it isn't*.
- ② Literally: "Because I'm looking for it right now."
- ③ As you have already seen, in Japanese we don't differentiate between singular and plural. Sometimes, though, we need to know how many objects there are. In this case, we use numbers, but we go further than that, too: we add a specific word, called a *measure word*, that specifies the kind of object we are talking about. Here 枚 *mai* (*mai*) lets us know that we are talking about objects that are thin (that is, like a sheet of paper). For other types of objects (books, round objects, etc.), we use other words. In English we do this some of the time, with "5 sheets of paper", "2 slices of pie", "one cup of milk".

- 11 十 枚 で 千 百 円 に
 jū mai de sen hyaku en ni
 (ju- mai dé sen hyahku en nee)

なります。③

na ri masu.
 nahreemahs')

- 12- はい。千 百 円 です。
 ha i. sen hyaku en de su.
 (hai) (sen hyahku en dés')

- 13- ありがとう ございます。
 a ri ga tō go za i masu.
 (ahreegahto- gozaheemahs')

□

れん しゅう
 練習 rensū

Exercise 1

- ① いいえ。郵便局 ではありません。
 iie. yūbinkyoku de wa arimasen.
 (ee-é) (yu-beenkyokoo dé wah ahreemahsen)
- ② 目黒 駅 の 隣 の デパート の
 meguro eki no tonari no depāto no
 (mégooro ékee no tonahree no depah-to no)
 うし す
 後ろ に 住んでいます。
 ushiro ni sunde imasu.
 oosheero nee soondé eemahs')
- ③ 葉書 を 二十 枚 買いました。
 hagaki o ni jū mai kaimashita.
 (hahgakhee o nee ju- mai kaheemahshtah)

- 11 For ten, that's 1,100 yen.
(*ten-sheets / [means] / 1000-100-yen / [goal] / become*)
- 12 – Here you are. One thousand one hundred yen.
(*yes*) (*1000-100-yen / it is*)
- 13 – Thank you very much.

- ④ ギリシャ料理は駅の後ろの
girisha ryōri wa eki no ushiro no
(*geereeshah ryo-ree wah ékee no oosheero no*)
タバコ屋の左にあります。
tabakoya no hidari ni arimasu.
(*tahbahkoyah no heedahree nee ahreemahs'*)
- ⑤ ちょっと見せて下さい。
chotto misete kudasai.
(*cho'to meesété koodahsai*)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① No, this is not the post-office. ② I live behind the department store beside the Meguro Station. ③ I bought 20 postcards. ④ The Greek restaurant is to the left of the tobacco shop behind the train station. ⑤ Show it to me for a bit.

23 Exercise 2

...に ^{ことば} 言葉を ^い 入れなさい

- ① What is the price for a postcard to the United States?
amerika made .. hagaki .. ryōkin wa
- ② Where is the library?
hon ya .. doko
- ③ Give me five postcards.
hagaki o

23 ^{だい に じゅうさん か} 第二十三課

dai ni jū san ka (dai nee ju- san kah)

^{し ごと}
仕事

shi goto
(sheegoto)

1- ^{うえ} 上 ^{むすこ} の 息子 ^{さん} さんは ^お お
ue no musu ko sa n wa o
(ooé no moosooko san wah o)

^{げんき} 元気 ^{です} ですか。①
gen ki de su ka.
(genkee dés' kah)

2- ^{ことし} 今年 ^{だいがく} 大学 ^{そつぎょう} を 卒業 ^{しました} しました。
kotoshi dai gaku o sotsu gyō shi mashi ta.
(kotoshee daigahkoo o sotsoogyo- sheemahshtah)

- ④ That'll be 1,000 yen.
 ni
- ⑤ It's just on the right.

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - no - no - ikura desu ka. ② - wa - ni arimasu ka. ③ - go mai kudasai. ④ sen en - narimasu. ⑤ sugu migi ni arimasu.

Lesson Twenty-Three 23

Work (work)

- 1 - How is your older son?
(above / [relation] / son / [announce] / [polite]-good health / it is / [question])
- 2 - This year he finished university.
(this year / university / [object] / graduation-did)

Notes

- ① 息子さん *musuko san (moosooko san)* is only used to refer to someone else's son (cf. Lesson 15, notes 1 and 3). お 元気 *o genki (o genkee)* is only used in speaking of another person. To talk about yourself (or about someone in your immediate family), we say 元気 *genki (genkee)*. Likewise, in item 6, we have お 勤め *o tsutome (otsootomé)*. 勤め *tsutome (tsutomé)* on its own means *a job*. The preceding お *o* is often used to make a word more polite when referring to someone who is not close to you.

- 3 - ^{とうだい} 東大 でした ね。 ②③
 tō dai de shi ta ne.
 (to-dai déshtah né)
- 4 - はい、そう です。
 ha i, sō de su.
 (hai so-dés')
- 5 - それはおめでとう ございます。 ④
 so re wa o me de tō go za i ma su.
 (soré wah omédéto-gozaheemahs')
- 6 どこにお ^{つと}勤め ですか。 ①
 do ko ni o tsuto me de su ka.
 (doko nee o tsootomé dés' kah)
- 7 - 四月 から ^{じ どうしゃ}自動車 ^{かんけい}関係 の
 shi gatsu ka ra ji dō sha kan kei no
 (sheegahtsoo kahrah jeedo-shah kanké- no
^{かいしゃ}会社 ^{つと}に ^{つと}勤めて います。
 kai sha ni tsuto me te i masu.
 kaishah nee tsootométe eemahs')
- 8 - それはよろしい ですね。 ⑤
 so re wa yo ro shi i de su ne.
 (sore wah yoroshee- dés' né)
- 9 - でも ^{いま にゅういん}今 入院 しています。
 de mo ima nyū in shi te i ma su.
 (démō eemah nyu-éen sheeté eemahs')
- 10 ^{ごがつ}五月 ^{こうつう}に ^{じこ}交通 事故 ^{じこ}に
 go gatsu ni kō tsū ji ko ni
 (go gahtsoo nee ko-tsu- jeeko nee
 あいました。
 a i mashi ta.
 aimahshtah)

- 3 – University of Tōkyō, right?
(*University of Tōkyō / it was / [agreement]*)
- 4 – Yes, that's right.
- 5 – All my congratulations.
- 6 – Where does he work?
(*where / [place] / [polite]-work / it is / [question]*)
- 7 – Since April he's been working at an automobile company.
(*April / since / car-connection / [relation] / company / [place] / be working*)
- 8 – That's really great!
(*that / [announce] / [polite]-good / it is / [agreement]*)
- 9 – But he's in the hospital at the moment.
(*but / now / enter hospital-be doing*)
- 10 – In May he was in an automobile accident.
(*May / [time] / traffic-accident / [goal] / have met*)

㊦㊧㊨㊩

Notes

- ② 東大 ^{とうだい} **tōdai** (*to-dai*) is the abbreviation of ^{とうきょう だいがく} 東京大学 **Tōkyō daigaku** (*to-kyo- daigahkoo*). It is very common for Japanese to form abbreviations out of Chinese character words (*kanji*) by using one of the characters per word in a compound word. It is kind of like abbreviations in English, where we use the first letter of each word to create an acronym. The National University of Tōkyō is the highest ranked university in Japan. Many of Japan's civil servants and administrators are recruited from the university each year.
- ③ でした **deshita** (*déshtah*) is the past-tense form of です **desu**. It means *it was*.
- ④ This is the general formula for congratulations after a happy event. It is also used to wish happy new year.
- ⑤ よろしい **yoroshii** (*yoroshee-*). This is a conversation where the two speakers obey a certain etiquette. In a conversation such as this, いい **ii** (*ee-*), which we have often seen, is not possible. It is replaced, instead, by よろしい **yoroshii**. We can see that いい **desu** (*ee- dés*) is middle-degree, and that よろしい **desu** (*yoroshee- dés*) is in high degree.

- 11 - それ は お^きの^{どく}毒 に。⑥
 so re wa o ki no doku ni.
 (soré wah okeenodokoo nee)
- 12 その^ご後 いか^がが です か。
 so no go i ka ga de su ka.
 (sonogo eekahgah dés' kah)
- 13 - おかげ^ごさ^ごまで、よ^くな^りまし^た。
 o kage sa ma de, yo ku na ri ma shi ta.
 (okahgésahmah dé yokoo nahreemahshtah)
- 来週^{らいしゅう} 退院^{たいいん} しま^す。⑦
 rai shū tai in shi ma su.
 (raishu- taieen sheemahs')
- 14 - 安^{あん}心^{しん} しま^した。
 an shin shi mashi ta.
 (ansheen sheemahshtah)

□

れん しゅう
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

- ① 昨^{きのう}日 の 朝^{あさ} でした。
 kinō no asa deshita.
 (keeno- no ahsah déshtah)
- ② 来週^{らいしゅう} から 禁煙^{きんえん} しま^す。
 raishū kara kin.en shimasu.
 (raishu- kahrah keen.én sheemahs')
- ③ 自^じ動^{どう}車^{しゃ} は 四^し月^{がつ} に 買^かいま^した。
 jidōsha wa shigatsu ni kaimashita.
 (jeedo-shah wah sheegahtsoo nee kaheemahshtah)

- 11 – That's really too bad!
 12 How's he been since then?
(since then / how / it is / [question])
 13 – Very well, thank you. He gets out next week.
(thanks to you / well / became) (next week / leave hospital-do)
 14 – I'm relieved!
(calmness-did)

Notes

- ⑥ Literally, "That's an unpleasant thing."
 ⑦ おかげさまで *okagesama de (okahgésahmah dé)*. Literally, it means, "Thanks to you." In fact, it is the usual way when thanking someone for asking about the condition of you or those close to you.

- ④ ^{だいがく}いつ ^{そつぎょう}大学 を 卒業 しましたか。
itsu daigaku o sotsugyō shimashita ka.
(eetsoo daigahkoo o sotsoogyo- sheemahshtah kah)
- ⑤ —お坊ちゃんはお ^{げんき}元気 ですか。
 —obotchan wa o genki desu ka.
(obo'chan wah o genkee dés' kah)
- おかげさまで、^{げんき}元気 です。
 —okagesama de, genki desu.
(okahgésahmah dé genkee dés')

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① That was yesterday morning. ② I'm going to quit smoking next week. ③ I bought my car in April. ④ When did he graduate?
 ⑤ —How is your little boy? —Very well, thank you.

24 Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば}言葉 を ^い入れなさい

- ① Where does your older son work?
ue no musuko doko ni . tsutome desu ka
- ② I am living in Tōkyō this year.
..... tōkyō ni sunde
- ③ It was a car company.
..... kankei
- ④ I'll go in April or May.
shi ka ni ikimasu
- ⑤ I'll wait until next Sunday.
raishū machimasu

24 ^{だい に じゅうよん か}第二十四課
dai ni jū yon ka (dai nee ju- yon kah)

アパート
a pā to
(ahpah-to)

1- やつと いい アパート が
ya t to i i a pā to ga
(yah'to ee- ahpah-to gah)

みつかりました。
mi tsu ka ri ma shi ta.
(meetsookahreemahshtah)

2 ととても ^{せま}狭い です。
to te mo sema i de su.
(totémo sémai dés')

Answers to Exercise 2

① - san wa - o -. ② kotoshi kara - imasu. ③ jidōsha - no kaisha deshita. ④ - gatsu - gogatsu -. ⑤ - no nichiyōbi made -.



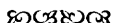
Lesson Twenty-Four 24

The Apartment (apartment)

- 1 - I've finally found a good apartment.
(finally / be good / apartment / [subject] / has been found)
- 2 - It's very small.
(very / be narrow / it is)

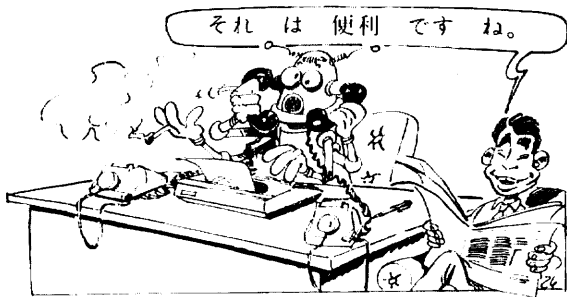
- 3 けれども 駅 から 歩いて
 ke re do mo eki ka ra aru i te
 (kérédomo ékee kahrah ahrooeté
 五分 です。
 go fun de su.
 go foon dés')
- 4- それ は 便利 ですね。
 so re wa ben ri de su ne.
 (soré wah benree dés' né)
- 5 でも うるさく ありません か。
 de mo u ru sa ku a ri ma se n ka.
 (démo ooroosahkoo ahreemahsen kah)
- 6- 電車の音は全然聞こえません
 den sha no oto wa zen zen ki ko e ma se n
 (denshah no oto wah zenzen keekoémahsen
 が、隣の幼稚園の子供が
 ga, tonari no yō chien no kodomo ga
 gah tonahree no yo-cheeen no kodomo gah
 うるさい です。①
 u ru sa i de su.
 ooroosai dés')
- 7- 何階ですか。
 nan kai de su ka.
 (nan kai dés' kah)
- 8- 四階です。
 yon kai de su.
 (yon kai dés')
- 9- 眺めはいかがですか。
 naga me wa i ka ga de su ka.
 (nahgahmé wah eekahgah dés' kah)

- 3 However, it's a five minute walk from the train station.
(*but / train station / from / walking / five-minutes / it is*)
- 4 – That's convenient!
(*that / [announce] / convenient / it is / [agreement]*)
- 5 But isn't it noisy?
(*but / not be noisy / [question]*)
- 6 – I can't hear the trains at all, but the children in the kindergarten next door are noisy.
(*train / [relation] / noise / [announce] / at all / cannot be heard / but // neighbor / [relation] / kindergarten / [relation] / children / [subject] / be noisy / it is*)
- 7 – What floor is it on?
(*what-floor / it is / question*)
- 8 – The fourth floor.
(*four-floor / it is*)
- 9 – How is the view?
(*view / [announce] / how / it is / [question]*)



Notes

- ① In the accompanying word-for-word translation, we have added a new sign: the double-slash // means that in the Japanese sentence there is a separation between two propositions. That means we're making progress! And we are going to be coming across some longer sentences, too.



- 10 - それ^わが… ち^にょうど 向^わかいに 二
 so re ga... chō do mu ka i ni ni
 (soré gah) (cho-do mookahee nee nee
 十^{じゅつ}階^{かい}のビル^たが立^たって います
 yuk kai no bi ru ga ta t te i ma su
 ju'kai no beeroo gah tah'té eemahs'
 から、何^{なに}も 見^みえません。
 ka ra, nani mo mi e ma se n.
 kahrah naneemo meeémahsen)
- 11 家賃^{やちん} だけ^きが 気^きに 入^いって
 ya chin da ke ga ki ni i t te
 (yahcheen dahké gah kee nee ee'té
 います。
 i ma su.
 eemahs')
- 12 それ^{たか}ほど 高^{たか}く あり^ありません。
 so re ho do taka ku a ri ma se n.
 (soréhodo tahkahkoo ahreemahsen) □

れん しゅう
 練習 rensū

Exercise 1

- ① 私^{わたくし}の^のア^あパ^ぱート^{ーと}は 十^{じゅう}二^に階^{かい}に
 watakushi no apāto wa jū ni kai ni
 (wahtahkooshee no ahpah-to wah ju-nee kai nee
 あります。
 arimasu.
 ahreemahs')

- 10 – Oh, that... Because of the 20-storey building across the street, I can't see anything.
(that / [subject]) (exactly / opposite side / [place] / two-ten-story / [relation] / building / [subject] / be standing / because // anything / can't be seen)
- 11 The rent is the only thing I like about the place
(rent / only / [subject] / spirit / [place] / enter)
- 12 It isn't too expensive!
(that much / not be expensive)

練習問題

- ② 電車でんしゃの音おとは聞きこえませんが
densha no oto wa kikoemasen ga
(dénshah no oto wah keekoémahsen ga)
 自動車じどうしゃの音おとは聞きこえます。
jidōsha no oto wa kikoemasu.
jeedo-shah no oto wah keekoémahs')
- ③ 眼鏡めがねを忘わすれましたから、何なにも
megane o wasuremashita kara, nanimo
(mégahné o wahsoorémahshtah kahrah naneemo)
 見みえません。
miemasen.
meeémahsen)
- ④ デパートまでバスで七なな分ぶんです
depāto made basu de nana fun desu
(depah-to mahdé bahsoo dé nanah foon dés')
 から、便利べんりです。
kara, benri desu.
kahrah benree dés')

25 ⑤ —うるさく ありません か。

—urusaku arimasen ka.
(ooroosahkoo ahreemahsen kah)

—^{ぜんぜん}全然 うるさく ありません。

—zenzen urusaku arimasen.
(zenzen ooroosahkoo ahreemahsen)

Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば}言葉 を ^い入れ なさい

① I'm not buying anything.

.....

② I hear the noise from the kindergarten.

yōchien

③ Because it's far, I'm going by bus.

tooi desu

④ It's not very far.

.....

25 ^{だい に じゅうご か}第二十五課

dai ni jū go ka (dai nee ju- go kah)

^{しょうせつ}
小説

shō setsu
(sho-sétsoo)

1 — ^{いま}今 ^{しょうせつ}小説 を ^か書いて います。

ima shō setsu o ka i te i ma su.
(eemah sho-sétsoo o kaheeté eemahs')

Answers to Exercise 1

① My apartment is on the twelfth floor. ② I don't hear any noise from the train, only from the cars. ③ I forgot my glasses, so I can't see anything. ④ It's seven minutes by bus to the department store, so it's convenient. ⑤ -It isn't noisy? -Not at all.

⑤ I can only see the building on the right.
 ga miemasu

Answers to Exercise 2

① nanimo kaimasen. ② - no oto ga kikoemasu. ③ - kara, basu de ikimasu. ④ sorochodo tooku arimasen. ⑤ migi no biru dake -.

Lesson Twenty-Five 25

The Novel

(novel)

1 - I'm writing a novel right now.
(now / novel / [object] / be writing)

- 2- へえ、どんな小説ですか。
 he e, do n na shō setsu de su ka.
 (hé- do'nah sho-sétsoo dés' kah)
- 3- 推理小説です。
 sui ri shō setsu de su.
 (sooeeree sho-sétsoo dés')
- 4- 出版するつもりですか。
 shuppan su ru tsu mo ri de su ka.
 (shu'pan sooroo tsoomoree dés' kah)
- 5- まだわかりません。
 ma da wa ka ri ma se n.
 (mahdah wahkahreemahsen)
- 6- どんな話ですか。
 do n na hanashi de su ka.
 (donna hanahshee dés' kah)
- 7- 主人公はファッション・モデル
 shujin kō wa fa s sho n mo de ru
 (shujeenko- wah fah'shon modéeroo
 です。
 de su.
 dés')
- 8- 知らないでスパイと結婚
 shi ra na i de su pa i to kek kon
 (sheerahnaidé s'pai to ké'kon
 します。
 shi ma su.
 sheemahs')
- 9- おもしろそう ですね。①
 o mo shi rō sō de su ne.
 (omosheeroso- dés' né)

- 2 – Oh! What kind of novel?
(*oh / what kind / novel / it is / [question]*)
- 3 – A detective novel.
(*detective novel / it is*)
- 4 – Do you intend to publish it?
(*publish-do / intention / it is / [question]*)
- 5 – I don't know yet.
(*not yet / not know*)
- 6 – What is it about?
(*what kind / story / it is / [question]*)
- 7 – The main character is a model.
(*main character / [announce] / fashion model / it is*)
- 8 – Without knowing it, she marries a spy.
(*not knowing / spy / [partnership] / marriage-do*)
- 9 – Sounds interesting!
(*seem interesting / it is / [agreement]*)

おもしろ

Notes

- ① おもしろそう *omoshirosō* (*omosheeroso-*). We already know おもしろい *omoshiroi* (*omosheeroee*), *interesting*. If we replace the い *i* of the adjective with そう *sō* (*so-*), then we get おもしろそう *omoshirosō* (*omosheeroso-*), which means *to seem interesting*.



- 10 何^{なん} ページ ぐらい になりますか。
 nan pē ji gu ra i ni na ri ma su ka.
 (nan pé-jee goorai nee nahreemahs' kah)
- 11 - 五^ご 百^{ひゃく} ページ ぐらい に
 go hyaku pē ji gu ra i ni
 (go hyahkoo pé-jee goorai nee
 なる と 思います。
 na ru to omo i masu.
 nahroo to omoemahs')
- 12 - へえ。長^{なが}い です ね。
 he e. naga i de su ne.
 (hé-) (nahgai dés' né)
- 13 もう どの ぐらい 書^かきましたか。
 mō do no gu ra i ka ki mashi ta ka.
 (mo- dono goorai kahkeemahshtah kah)
- 14 - まだ 五 ページ です。
 ma da go pē ji de su.
 (mahdah go pé-jee dés')

□

れん しゅう
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

- ① 駅^{えき} まで どの ぐらい です か。
 eki made donogurai desu ka.
 (ékee mahdé donogoorai dés' kah)

- 10 About how many pages will it be?
(*what-page / about / [goal] / become / [question]*)
- 11 – I think it will be about 500 pages.
(*five-hundred-page / about / [goal] / become / [quotation] / think*)
- 12 – Wow! That's long!
(*wow*) (*be long / it is / [agreement]*)
- 13 How much have you written?
(*already / how much about / wrote / [question]*)
- 14 – Only five.
(*up to now / five-page / it is*)

練習問題

- ② このお菓子はおいしそうですね。
kono o kashi wa oishisō desu ne.
(*kono o kahshee wah oeesheeso- dés' né*)
- ③ どんな本を買いましたか。
donna hon o kaimashita ka.
(*do'nah hon o kaheemahshtah kah*)
- ④ 再婚するつもりです。
saikon suru tsumori desu.
(*saikon sooroo tsoomoree dés'*)
- ⑤ 来週退院すると思います。
raishū tai.in suru to omoimasu.
(*raishu- tai.een sooroo to omoemahs'*)

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① About how far is it to the train station? ② This snack looks delicious! ③ What kind of book did you buy? ④ I plan on remarrying. ⑤ I think he will leave the hospital next week.

26 Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば} 言葉 を ^い 入れ なさい

- ① I think I will publish it.
shuppan omoimasu
- ② I have the intention of becoming a singer.
kashu tsumori desu
- ③ What kind of person is she?
.

26 ^{だい に じゅうろっ か} 第二十六課
dai ni jū rok ka (dai nee ju- ro'kah)

^{ちゅうごく} 中国 ^い へ 行く
chū goku e i ku
(chu-gokoo é eekoo)

1 - ^{らいねん} 来年 ^{はる} の 春 ^{ちゅうごく} に 中国 へ
rai nen no haru ni chūgoku e
(rainen no hahroo nee chu-gokoo é)

^い 行く つもり でした。
i ku tsu mo ri de shi ta.
eekoo (soomoree déshtah)

2 - ^{ちゅうごくご} 中国語 は できます か。 ①
chū goku go wa de ki ma su ka.
(chu-gokoogo wah dékeemahs' kah)

3 - ^{わたくし} 私 は できません。
watakushi wa de ki ma se n.
(wahtahkooshee wah dékeemahsen)

- ④ I am writing a postcard.
hagaki o
- ⑤ These forks seem expensive.
kono fōku wa desu

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - suru to -. ② - ni naru -. ③ donna hito desu ka. ④ - kaite imasu.
⑤ - takasō -.

Lesson Twenty-Six 26

Voyage to China

(China / [destination] / to go)

- 1 - I was planning on going to China next spring.
(next year / [relation] / spring / [time] / China / [destination] / go / intention / it was)
- 2 - Do you speak Chinese?
(China-language / [announce] / be possible / [question])
- 3 - No, I can't
(me / [announce] / not be possible)

ルビ

Notes

- ① The name of a country followed by the word 語 *go* designates the language of the country. 中国 *chūgoku* (*chu-gokoo*), *China*; 中国語 *chūgokugo* (*chu-gokoogo*), *the Chinese language*. 日本 *nihon* (*neehon*), *Japan*; 日本語 *nihongo* (*neehongo*), *the Japanese language*. The only exception is for *English*, which is 英語 *eigo* (*é-go*), while *England* is イギリス *igirisu* (*eegereesoo*).

4 けれども ^{むすこ}息子はよくできます
 ke re domo musuko wa yoku de ki ma su
 (kérédomo moosooko wah yokoo dékeemahs')

から、つれて行くつもりでした。
 ka ra, tsu re te i ku tsu mo ri deshi ta.
 kahrah tsoorété eekoo tsoomoree déshtah) ②③

5 しかし ^{むすこ}息子は ^{つごう}都合が
 shi ka shi musuko wa tsu gō ga
 (sheekahshee moosooko wah tsoogo-gah

^{わる}悪くなりました。

waru ku na ri mashita.

wahrookoo nahreemahshtah)

6- 中国 ^{ちゅうごく}へ ^{なに}何を ^いしに行きますか。
 chūgoku e nani o shi ni i ki ma su ka.
 (chu-gokoo é nanee o shee nee eekeemahs' kah)

7- 仕事 ^{しごと}と ^{かんこう}観光 ^{です}です。
 shi goto to kankō de su.

(sheegoto to kanko- dés')

8- 私 ^{わたくし}は ^{ちゅうごくご}中国語 ^{すこ}が ^{少し}少し
 watakushi wa chūgoku go ga suko shi
 (wahtahkooshee wah chu-gokoogo gah s'koshee

できますから、お供 ^{とも}
 de ki ma su ka ra, o tomo
 dékeemahs' kahrah o tomo

しましょうか。
 shi ma shō ka.
 sheemahsho- kah)

- 4 But my son speaks it very well, so I think I'm going to bring him
(*however / my son / [announce] / well / be possible / because // bring along / go / intention / it was*)
- 5 However, it turns out he can't go.
(*but / my son / [announce] / circumstances / [subject] / be bad / became*)
- 6 – What are you going to do in China?
(*China / [destination] / what / [object] / do / [goal] / go / [question]*)
- 7 – I'm going for business and pleasure.
(*work / and / tourism / it is*)
- 8 – I know a little Chinese, shall I go along?
(*me / [announce] / China-language / [subject] / a little / be possible / because // [polite]-accompany-let's do / [question]*)



Notes

- ② Here, 息子 **musuko** (*moosooko*) (cf. Lesson 23, item 1), because the man is talking about his own son.
- ③ つれて行く **tsurete iku** (*tsoorété eekoo*). Note that when two verbs follow each other directly, the first ends with a final て (*té*).



- 9 それに^{らいねん} 来年の^{はる} 春は^{ひま} 暇です。
 so re ni rainen no haru wa hima de su.
 (soré nee rainen no hahroo wah heemah dés')
- 10 - それ は たすかります。ぜひ
 so re wa ta su ka ri masu. ze hi
 (soré wah tahsookahreemahs') (zéhee
 おねがい します。
 o ne ga i shi masu.
 onégahee sheemahs')
- 11 今度^{こんど} の^{げつ} 月曜日^{ようび} の^{ばん} 晩^{いっしょ} 一緒
 kon do no getsu yō bi no ban is sho
 (kondo no gétsooyo-bi no ban ee'sho
 に^{しょくじ} 食事^し を しまししょう。
 ni shoku ji o shi ma shō.
 nee shokoojee o sheemahsho-)
- 12 - はい、そう しまししょう。
 ha i, sō shi ma shō.
 (hai so- sheemahsho-)

□

れん しゅう
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

- ① イギリス人^{じん} の^{ともだち} 友達 を ピクニック
 igirisujin no tomodachi o pikunikku
 (eegeereesoojeen no tomodahchee o peekeonee'koo
 に^{さそ} 誘う つもり です。
 ni sasou tsumori desu.
 nee sasou tsoomoree dés')

- 9 And, I'm free next spring.
(*moreover / next year / [relation] / spring / [announce] / free time / it is*)
- 10 – You're my saviour! Please come!
(*that / [announce] / help*) (*absolutely / please*)
- 11 Let's have dinner together next Monday night.
(*next time / [relation] / Monday / [relation] / night / together / [adverbial] / meal / [object] / let's do*)
- 12 – Yes, okay.
(*yes / so / let's do*)

練習問題

- ② 息子^{むすこ}さんはフランス語^こ
musuko san wa furansugo
(*moosooko san wah fooransoogo*)
ができますか。
ga dekimasu ka.

(*gah dékeemahs' kah*)

- ③ 本屋^{ほんや}へ何^{なに}を買い^かに
honya e nani o kai ni
(*honyah é nanee o kaihee nee*)
行きますか。
ikimasu ka.

(*eekeemahs' kah*)

- ④ 暇^{ひま}ですから、映画^{えいが}を見^み
hima desu kara, eiga o mi
(*heemah dés' kahrah é-gah o mee*)
に行きましょう。
ni ikimashō.

(*nee eekeemahsho-*)

- ⑤ 郵便局 ^{ゆうびんきょく} へ 行きます。子供 ^{こども} を
 yūbinkyoku e ikimasu. kodomo o
 (yu-beenkyokoo é eekeemahs' kodomo o

つれて 行きます。
 tsurete ikimasu.
 (tsoorété eekeemahs')

Exercise 2

... に 言葉 ^{ことば} を 入れ ^い なさい

- ① Next year I'll buy a car.
 kaimasu
- ② I speak a little Japanese.

- ③ I'll go next Saturday.

27 第二十七課

dai ni jū nana ka (dai nee ju- nanah kah)

ひ こうじょう につく
 飛行場 に 着く
 hi kō jō ni tsuku
 (heeko-jo- nee tsookoo)

- 1- もし もし。正子 ^{まさこ} です。
 mo shi moshi. masa ko de su.
 (moshee moshee) (mahsahko dés')

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I'm going to invite some English friends of mine on a picnic.
 ② Can your son speak French? ③ What are you going to buy at the bookstore? ④ Since we're free, let's go to the movies. ⑤ I'm going to the post-office. I'm taking the kids.

- ④ I'll only eat a little bit of bread.
 pan dake tabemasu
 ⑤ I had a problem.
 tsugō ga mashita

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① rainen jidōsha o -. ② nihongo ga sukoshi dekimasu. ③ kondo no doyōbi ni ikimasu. ④ - wa sukoshi -. ⑤ - waruku nari -.

Lesson Twenty-Seven 27

Arriving at the Airport

(airport / [goal] / to arrive)

- 1 - Hello. This is Masako.
(hello) (Masako / it is)

2 - ^{ひ こう き}飛行機 は ^き決まりましたか。
 hi kō ki wa ki ma ri mashi ta ka.
 (heeko-kee wah keemahreemahshtah kah)

いつ ^つ着きますか。
 i tsu tsu ki ma su ka.
 (eetsoo tsookeemahs' kah)

3 - ^{にっ こう}日航 の ^{よん}四 ^{ひやく}百 ^ご五 ^{じゅう}十 ^{さん}三
 nik kō no yon hyaku go jū san
 (nee'ko no yon hyahkoo go ju- san)

^{びん}便 で、しあさって の ^{ご ぜん}午前
 bin de, shi a sa t te no go zen
 been dé sheeahsah'té no gozen

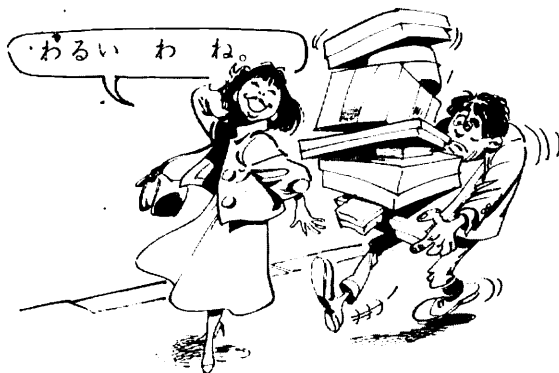
^{しち}七 ^じ時 ^{じゅう}十 ^ご五 ^{ふん}分に ^{なり}成田
 shichi ji jū go fun ni nari ta
 sheechee jee ju- go foon nee nahreeta

^{くう こう}空港 に ^つ着きます。①②
 kū kō ni tsu ki masu.
 ku-ko- nee tsookeemahs')

4 - ^{ひ こうじょう}飛行場 まで ^{むか}迎え に
 hi kō jō ma de muka e ni
 (heeko-jo- mahdé mookahé nee

^い行きます から ね。
 i ki ma su ka ra ne.
 eekeemahs' kahrah né)

- 2 – Is your flight set yet? When do you arrive?
(airplane / [announce] / be decided / [question]) (when / arrive / [question])
- 3 – I'll arrive at Narita in two days, at 7:15 in the morning, on Japan Airlines flight 453.
(Japan Airlines / [relation] / four-hundred-five-ten-three - flight-[means] / after-after-tomorrow / [relation] / morning / seven-o'clock-ten-five-minute / [time] / Narita-airport / [goal] / arrive)
- 4 – I'll meet you at the airport.
(airport / until / go to meet / [goal] / go / because / [agreement])



Notes

- ① 日航 にっこう nikkō (nee'ko-) is the abbreviation of 日(本)航(空) にほんこうくう nihon kōkū (neehon ko-ku-) (Japan / Airlines), the name of Japan's national airplane company, known best in English as *Japan Airlines*.
- ② 成田 なりた narita (nahreetah), the airport servicing Tōkyō.

- 5- 朝 ^{あさ} 早い ^{はや} から、箱崎 ^{はこざき} のエア・
 asa haya i ka ra, hako zaki no e a
 (ahsah hahyahee kahrah hahkozahkee no éah
 ターミナル まで リムジン・
 tā mi na ru ma de ri mu ji n
 tah-meenahroo mahdé reemoojeen

バス で 行きます。そこ で
 ba su de i ki masu. so ko de
 bahs' dé eekeemahs') (soko dé

あ
 会いましょう。③
 a i ma shō.

aheemahsho-)

- 6- 大丈夫 ^{だいじょうぶ} です よ。早く ^{はや} 会 ^あ いたい
 dai jō bu de su yo. haya ku a . i ta i
 (daijo-boo dés' yo) (hahyahkoo aheetai
 から ^{ひこうじょう} 飛行場 まで ^い 行きます。④
 ka ra hi kō jō ma de i ki ma su.
 kahrah heeko-jo- mahdé eekeemahs')

- 7 必ず ^{かなら} 行 ^い きます から、待 ^ま って
 kanara zu i ki ma su ka ra. ma t te
 (kanahrahzoo eekeemahs' kahrah mah'té

て ^{くだ} 下さい。
 te kudasa i.

té koodahsai)

- 8- そう ^{わる} ですか。悪い ^{わる} わね。⑤
 sō de su ka. waru i wa ne.
 (so- dés' kah) (wahrooe wah né)

- 9- 荷物 ^{にもつ} はたくさん ^{たくさん} あります ^{あります} か。
 ni motsu wa ta ku sa n a ri ma su ka.
 (neemotsoo wah tahkoosan ahreemahs' kah)

- 5 – It's early in the morning, so I'll take the bus to Hakozaiki terminal. Let's meet there.
(morning / be early / because // Hakozaiki / [relation] / terminal / until / bus / [means] / go) (there / [place] / let's meet)
- 6 – No, that's okay. I can't wait to see you, so I'll go to the airport.
(no problem / it is / [engagement]) (fast / want to meet / because // airport / until / go)
- 7 – I'll be there without fail, so wait for me there.
(without fail / go / because // please wait)
- 8 – Are you sure? You don't have to.
(so / it is / [question]) (be bad / [softener] / [agreement])
- 9 – Do you have a lot of baggage?
(baggage / [announce] / a lot / exist / [question])

のちのち

Notes

- ③ 箱崎 ^{はこざき} **hakozaiki**, the terminal in the center of Tōkyō. リムジン・バス **rimujin basu** are the so-called *limousine buses* that shuttle from the airport to the terminal in the center of the city, roughly an hour away.
- ④ The expression 大丈夫 ^{だいじょうぶ} です **daijōbu desu** (*daijo-boo dés*) is the exact equivalent of our *it's okay*. It affirms that there will be no obstacles in the completion of an action. So it gets used very often!
- ⑤ After ね **ne** (*né*) and よ **yo**, here is another kind of little word you will find at the end of sentences: わ **wa** (*wah*). But be careful, this one is used **exclusively** by women, and only in situations of familiarity. It is a kind of "softener", usually said following a verb or adjective of the lower degree. Here, we find 悪い ^{わるい} **warui** (*wahrooe*) alone. Until now we have always come across expressions like いい ^{いい} です **ii desu** (*ee- dés*), *it's good* (cf. Lesson 2, item 5; Lesson 9, item 2, etc.). In the accompanying translation we have always explained that いい ^{いい} **ii** (*ee-*) alone means *to be good*. Like the verb, the adjective also has three degrees. いい ^{いい} です **ii desu** (*ee-dés*) is the middle degree, いい ^{いい} on its own is in low degree. Here, 悪い ^{わるい} **warui** (*wahrooe*) is in low degree, as the conversation takes place between two friends. Very often in this kind of exchange, speakers will mix middle and low degrees rather freely.

- 10 - ^{ちい}小さい ^{ふた}バッグ 二つ だけ です。
 chiisa i ba g gu futa tsu da ke de su.
 (chee- sai bah'goo footahtsoo dahké dés')
- 11 - えっ。それ だけ。おみやげ は？
 e. so re da ke. o mi ya ge wa.
 (é') (soré dahké) (omeeyahgé wah)
- 12 - ^{しんぱい}心配 しないで。いい ^{もの}物 を
 shin pai shi na i de. i i mono o
 (sheenpai sheenaidé) (ee- mono o
^か買って ^き来ました。
 ka t te ki ma shi ta.
 kah'té keemahshtah)
- 13 - ^{あに}じゃ。兄 と ^{いっしょ}一緒に ^{ぜいかん}税関 を
 ja. ani to is sho ni zei kan o
 (jah) (anee to ee'sho nee zé-kan o
^で出た ^{ところ}所で ^ま待っています。
 de ta tokoro de ma t te i ma su.
 détah tokoro dé mah'té eemahs')
- 14 - それでは、よろしく おねがい
 so re dewa, yo ro shi ku o ne ga i
 (sorédéwah yorosheekoo onégahee
 します。
 shi masu.
 sheemahs')

□

- 10 – Only two small bags.
(*be small / bag / two / only / it is*)
- 11 – What? Is that all? What about souvenirs?
(*what!*) (*that / only*) (*souvenir / [announce]*)
- 12 – Don't worry, I bought some great stuff.
(*worry-do not do*) (*be good / thing / [object] / buy / came*)
- 13 – Okay. My brother and I will be waiting where you get out of customs.
(*then*) (*older brother / [partnership] / together / [adverbial] / customs / [object] / go out / place / [place] / be waiting*)
- 14 – In that case, thanks in advance!
(*then / well / please*)

練習問題

れん しゅう
練習 rensū

Exercise 1

- ① 写真^{しゃしん}がたくさんあります。
shashin ga takusan arimasu.
(*shasheen gah tahkoosan ahreemahs'*)
- ② 飛行機^{ひこうき}が見え^みましたか。
hikōki ga miemashita ka.
(*heeko-kee gah mee'émahshtah kah*)
- ③ このアパートは小さい^{ちい}から
kono apāto wa chiisai kara
(*kono ahpah-to wah chee-sai kahrah*)
買^かいません。
kaimasen.
(*kaheemahsen*)

④ 今日行く会社はここから

kyō iku kaisha wa koko kara
(kyo- eekoo kaishah-wah koko kahrah

ちか
近いです。

chikai desu.

cheekai dés')

⑤ 明日の午前八時三十五

ashita no gozen hachi ji san jū go
(ahshtah no gozen hahchee jee san ju-go

ふん つ おも
分に着くとおもいます。

fun ni tsuku to omoimasu.

foon nee tsookoo to omoemahs')

Exercise 2

...に言葉を入れなさい

① I went there by airplane.

.....

② Let's meet up quickly.

.....

③ I got here yesterday morning at 6:12.

kinō ni tsukimashita

④ When are you going to China?

.....

Answers to Exercise 1

① There are many photos. ② Did you see the airplanes? ③ I'm not buying this apartment because it's small. ④ The company I'm going to today is near here. ⑤ I think they arrive tomorrow morning at 8:35.

- ⑤ I have two large suitcases.
 ookii toranku ga arimasu
- ⑥ You made a beautiful object.
 ii o tsukurimashita ne

Answers to Exercise 2

① hikōki de ikimashita. ② hayaku aimashō. ③ – no gozen roku ji jū ni fun –, ④ itsu chūgoku e ikimasu ka. ⑤ –futatsu. ⑥ – mono –.

28 第二十八課

dai ni jū hak' ka (dai nee ju- hah'kah)

まとめ
matome

Revision and Notes

We have made a big step. But we still have to keep count of what we have learned. And above all, remind yourself, take the time to let it all sink in and be sure you understand everything. We have begun to come across longer sentences and phrases. It is important to note each word, with the help of the transcription and accompanying translation.

By now you have already gotten used to the word order, and soon Japanese sentences will seem completely natural (if it hasn't become so already!).

1. Beginning with the names of the countries you have learned, you can now easily form:

-the word for inhabitants of those countries. All you have to do is add 人 ^{じん}jin (*jeen*), which means *person*:

アメリカ ^あamerika (*ahméreekah*): *America*

アメリカ人 ^あamerika jin (*ahméreekahjeen*): *an American, Americans*

イギリス ^いigirisu (*eegeereesoo*): *England*

イギリス人 ^いigirisu jin (*eegeereesoojeen*): *an English person, the English*

フランス ^ふfuransu (*fooransoo*): *France*

フランス人 ^ふfuransu jin (*fooransoojeen*): *a French person, the French*

Lesson Twenty-Eight 28

中国 ^{ちゅうごく} **chūgoku** (*chu-gokoo*): *China*

中国人 ^{ちゅうごくじん} **chūgoku jin** (*chu-gokoojeen*): *a Chinese person, the Chinese*

日本 ^{にほん} **nihon** (*neehon*): *Japan*

日本人 ^{にほんじん} **nihon jin** (*neehonjeen*): *a Japanese person, the Japanese*
—the word for the country's language. Simply add the word 語 ^ご **go**, which means *language*:

フランス語 ^{ふらんすご} **furansu go** (*fooransoogo*): *French*

中国語 ^{ちゅうごくご} **chūgoku go** (*chu-gokoogo*): *Chinese*

日本語 ^{にほんご} **nihon go** (*neehongo*): *Japanese*

The only exception is English, for which we say:

英語 ^{えいご} **eigo** (*é-go*)

—the corresponding adjective. Here you have to add の **no** to indicate the relationship between the country and a noun:

日本の映画 ^{にほん えいが} **nihon no eiga** (*neehon no é-gah*): *a Japanese movie, Japanese cinema*

フランスの映画 ^{ふらんす えいが} **furansu no eiga** (*fooransoo no é-gah*): *a French movie, French film*

アメリカの映画 ^{あめりか えいが} **amerika no eiga** (*ahméreekah no é-gah*): *an American movie, American cinema*

2. You are also ready by now to make interrogations. We have now seen just about every way to ask a question:

何 / 何 ^{なに なん} **nani** or **nan** (*nanee / nan*): *what?* (lessons 2, 5, 8, 16, 24...)

だれ **dare** (*dahré*): *who?* (lesson 19)

いつ **itsu** (*eetsoo*): *when?* (lesson 27)

どこ **doko** (*doko*): *where?* (lessons 1, 4, 5, 15, 20, 22, 23 ...)

いかが **ikaga** (*eekahgah*): *how?* (lessons 16, 19, 24)

28	いくら	ikura (<i>eekoorah</i>): <i>how much?</i> (lesson 17, 22)
	いくつ	ikutsu (<i>eekootsoo</i>): <i>how many?</i> (lesson 15)
	どのぐらい	donogurai (<i>donogoorai</i>): <i>about how many?</i> (lesson 25)
	どちら	dochira (<i>docheerah</i>): <i>which one?</i> (lesson 10)
	どんな	donna (<i>do'nah</i>): (preceding a noun) <i>which kind?</i> (lesson 19, 25)

There are still two or three more question words to complete the list. Some of them we are already familiar with, others not yet, but we have time...

3. But asking questions isn't enough. You have to reply, too, and answer with precision. In the last review chapter (lesson 21, paragraph 2), we saw that an adjective always comes before the noun it modifies. This is a very important principle of Japanese: all words modifying a noun will come before it, no matter what form that modification takes. That could be an adjective (cf. lesson 21, paragraph 2), but also:

–one or more other nouns. In this case, they are linked to the main noun by the relation particle の **no**, and sometimes appear as veritable catalogues (cf. lesson 22, item 4, and exercises 2 and 4; lesson 24, item 6; lesson 25, item 11 and exercise 1).

–a verb, alone (lesson 25, item 4 exercise 4; lesson 26, item 4), or with complements (lesson 26, item 1 and exercise 1; lesson 27, item 13 and exercise 4). Take a good look at these examples, read them over a few times to make sure you have grasped their structure, because it is the only construction possible to Japanese, whereas in English we have many kinds of relative propositions, pronouns, and so on... We will come across this structure again and again, and we will be going into more depth, too!

4. Before diving into the subsequent lessons, let's take another look at the question of degrees. In lesson 21, paragraph 4, we explained it as pertaining to verbs. In fact, it concerns all words with a variable form, which means not only verbs, but adjectives, too (and

sometimes even nouns, despite being invariable!). Some examples to reiterate:

Verb:	middle degree	lower degree
<i>do</i>	します shimasu	する suru (lesson 25, item 4)
<i>become</i>	なります narimasu	なる naru (lesson 25, item 11)
<i>go</i>	行きます ikimasu	行く iku (lesson 26, item 1)
<i>exited</i>	出ました demashita	出た deta (lesson 27, item 13)

Adjectives:

to be bad 悪い **warui desu** 悪い **warui** (lesson 27, item 8)

So now comes the main question: when do you employ the middle degree, and when the low degree? There are some simple rules:

- a. If the word is a verb or an adjective that comes at the **end of a sentence**, the degree used depends on the situation. As with lesson 22, where the conversation takes place between two people who don't know each other very well, such as employee and customer; the middle degree is customary. In lesson 23, the conversation takes place between two people who know each other well, but who want to keep a certain distance: middle degree with a few additions from the higher degree. On the other hand, the conversation in lesson 27 is between two friends: middle degree mixed with a few words from lower degree. Of course, in certain situations, you are sure to find very, very, very polite conversations, entirely in the high degree, or very, very informal conversations completely in the low degree (between classmates in lower or high school, for example), but the boundaries are not always so strict.

This principle also applies to certain verbs and adjectives found at the end of **some** propositions: those that end in が **ga** (cf. lesson 24, item 6) or から **kara** (cf. lesson 22, item 9; lesson 24, item 10; lesson 26, item 4; lesson 27, items 4, 5, 6).

- 28 b. In all other cases, an adjective or verb **within** a sentence or proposition will be in low degree. We have seen the two main instances of this kind of usage: an adjective or verb used to modify a noun. For adjectives, see the examples given in lesson 21, paragraph 2, and also in lesson 24, item 1: いい アパート *ii apāto* (*ee- ahpah-to*); lesson 27, item 10: 小さい バッグ *chiisai baggu* (*chee-sai ba'goo*).

—For the verbs, see lesson 25, item 4:

出版 する つもり ですか。

shuppan suru tsumori desu ka. (*shu'pan sooroo tsoomoree dés' kah*): *do you have the intention of publishing it?*

—lesson 26, item 1:

来年 の 春 に 中国 へ 行く つもり でした。

rainen no haru ni chūgoku e iku tsumori deshita. (*rainen no hahroo nee chu-gokoo é eekoo tsoomoree déshtah*): *I had the intention of going to China next Spring;*

—lesson 27, item 13:

税関 を 出た 所。

zeikan o deta tokoro. (*zé-kan o détah tokoro*): *where you get out of customs.* Here, no matter what the situation, there is no possible choice: this will always be in low degree;

—the same for lesson 25, item 11:

五 百 ページ ぐらい になる と 思います。

go hyaku pēji gurai ni naru to omoimasu. (*go hyahku pé-jee goorai nee nahroo to omoemahs'*) *I think that would be about five hundred pages.* Before と 思います *to omoimasu*, (that / to think) *I think that...* you no longer have an option: this will always be in low degree.

At first glance this is sure to look very complicated! But that is only because we don't have the same kind of device in English. So let's say it again: for the moment you don't need to retain everything –that will come in due time. Right now you just have to worry about understanding, noting the differences, and knowing what they correspond to. And, since we will be using these constructions where low degree is required without stop, just be aware and pay attention in the lessons to come. At any rate, don't worry about it –we will talk about it more, and soon!

5. By now you are getting used to the pronunciation. As we have been reminding you from the beginning, it isn't difficult! So we are going to begin the process of detaching ourselves bit by bit from the figurative pronunciation guide. In the next six lessons, we will keep it there for the text of the lesson, but we won't be using it in the notes or in the exercises. You will see, you won't miss it a bit!

29 第二十九課

だい に じゅうきゅう か
dai ni jū kyū ka (dai nee ju-kyu-kah)

たんじょうび
誕生日
tan jō bi
(tanjo-bee)

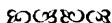
- 1- ^{こんど}今度の ^{かようび}火曜日は、あなた
kon do no ka yō bi wa, a na ta
(kondo no kahyo-bee wah anahtah
^{たんじょうび}の ^{たんじょうび}誕生日だから、どこか
no tan jō bi da ka ra, do ko ka
no tanjo-bee dah kahrah dokokah
^{しょくじ}でお ^{しょくじ}食事しましょう。①
de o shoku ji shi ma shō.
dé o shokoojee sheemahsho-)
- 2 それから ^{しばい}お芝居か
so re ka ra o shiba i ka
(sorékahrah o sheebai kah
^{おんがっかい}音楽会 ^いに行かない?②
on gak kai ni i ka na i?
onga'kai nee eekanai)
- 3- てんぷらが ^た食べたいな。③④
te n pu ra ga ta be ta i na.
(tenpoorah gah tahbétai nah)

Lesson Twenty-Nine 29

Birthday

(birthday)

- 1 – Next Tuesday it's your birthday. Let's go out to dinner somewhere.
(*this time / [relation] / Tuesday / [announce] / you / [relation] / birthday / it is / because // somewhere / [place] / [familiarity]-meal-let's do*)
- 2 What if we went to the theatre or to a concert afterwards?
(*afterwards / [familiarity]-theatre / or else / concert / [goal] / not go*)
- 3 – I would love to eat tempura!
(*tempura / [subject] / be the object of desire of eating / [reflection]*)



Notes

- ① The conversation taking place here is between a woman and her husband. For the most part they use the low degree, particularly when the choice exists between low and middle degrees (at the end of a phrase; before the *が ga* and *から kara*). To begin: *だ da* is the low form of *です desu*: *it is*.
- ② *行かない ikanai*, low degree of *行きません ikimasen*: *not go*. When the tone of conversation is very familiar, there isn't even any need to use *か ka* to indicate the asking of a question, as long as the intonation of the sentence rises towards the end (as we use a higher pitch when asking questions in English). In this case only do we end the sentence with a question mark.
- ③ *てんぷら tempura*, lightly fried vegetables or fish.
- ④ *な na*, cf. Lesson 19, note 5.

4- じゃ それなら ^{うえはら}上原 さんが
 ja so re na ra ue hara sa n ga

(jah sorénahrah ooéhahrah san gah)

^{おし}教えて くれた ^{みせ}お 店 に
 oshi e te ku re ta o mise ni

osheeété kurétah o meesé nee

^い行きましょう。⑤⑥

i ki ma shō.

eekeemahsho-)

5- ぴあ は どこ。⑦

pi a wa do ko?

(peeah wah doko)

6- そこの ^{うえ}ピアノ の 上 に
 so ko no pi a no no ue ni

(soko no peeano no ooé nee

ある から ^と取って。⑧

a ru ka ra to t te.

ahroo kahrah to'té)

7 お ^{しばい}芝居 は ^{なん}何 ページ に
 o shiba i wa nan pē ji ni

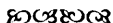
(o sheebai wah nan pé-jee nee

^で出て いる? ^{おんがっかい}音楽会 は?⑨

de te i ru? on gak kai wa?

dété eeroo) (ongak'kai wah)

- 4 – In that case, let's go to the restaurant that Mrs. Uehara suggested.
(so / in that case / Uehara-Mrs. / [subject] / teach / have done for me / [[familiarity]-store / [goal] / go)
- 5 – Where is *The Pia*?
(Pia / [announce] / where)
- 6 – On the piano, pass it to me.
(there / [relation] / piano / [relation] / above / [place] / exist / because // take)
- 7 What page are the theatres on? And the concerts?
([[familiarity]-theatre / [announce] / what-page / [place] / appear) (concert / [announce])



Notes

- ⑤ くれた *kureta*, low degree of くれました *kuremashita*: *having done for me.*
- ⑥ 店 *mise*, a very general term for all stores, including restaurants.
- ⑦ ぴあ *pia*, a weekly magazine that lists all shows and spectacles in Tōkyō.
- ⑧ ある *aru*, the low degree of あります *arimasu*: *exist.*
- ⑨ 出ている *dete iru*, low degree for 出ています *dete imasu*: *going out, appearing.*

- 8 おんがっかい なら 今 サモロビッチ
 on gak kai na ra ima sa mo ro bi t chi
 (onga'kai nahrah eemah sahmorobee'chee

が 日本 に 来 ている から、
 ga ni hon ni ki te i ru ka ra,
 gah neehon nee keeté eeroo kahrah

聞 き に 行 き ま し ょ う。⑩
 ki ki ni i ki ma shō.
 keekee nee eekeemahsho-)

- 9 それとも 歌舞伎 なら 今
 so re to mo ka bu ki na ra ima
 (sorétomo kahbookey nahrah eemah

ごさぶろう が 「四谷 怪談」 を や っ て
 go sabu rō ga yotsu yakai dan o ya t te
 go sahburoo-gah yotsooyah kaidan o yah'té

い る わ よ。⑪⑫⑬
 i ru wa yo.
 eeroo wah yo)

- 10 あなたは サモロビッチ と 五三郎
 a na ta wa sa mo ro bi t chi to go sabu rō
 (ahnahtah wah sahmorobee'chee to gosahbooro-

と ど っ ち が い い の。⑭
 to do t chi ga i i no.
 to do'chee gah ee- no)

- 8 If you want to see a concert, Samorovitch is in Japan right now, so let's go see that.
(concert / if it is / now / Samorovitch / [subject] / Japan / [goal] / come / because // listen / [goal] / let's go)
- 9 Or if you feel like kabuki, Gosaburō is showing *Ghosts of Yotsuya* at the moment.
(otherwise / kabuki / if it is / now / Gosaburō / [subject] / Yotsuya-ghost story / [object] / he doing / [softener] / [engagement])
- 10 Which do you prefer, Samorovitch or Gosaburō?
(you / [announce] / Samorovitch / and / Gosaburō / and / which one of the two / [subject] / be good / [question])

◇◇◇◇◇

Notes

- ⑩ 来ている *kite iru*, low degree of 来て います *kite imasu*: *coming*.
- ⑪ 歌舞伎 *kabuki* is one of Japan's national traditional styles of theatre. It is a stylized performance full of special effects, costumes, and lots of color.
- ⑫ やっている *yatte iru*, low degree for やって います *yatte imasu*: *doing*
 For all forms of て います *te imasu* (middle degree), て いる *te iru* (low degree), cf. Lesson 11, note 2.
- ⑬ 「四谷怪談」 *yotsuya kaidan*, one of the most famous kabuki plays.
- ⑭ の *no*, used often, but mostly by women, in place of か *ka* to end an interrogative statement.

11 あ、ちょっと^ま待^まって。火曜日^{かようび}は
 a, cho t to ma t te. ka yō bi wa
 (ah cho'to mah'té) (kahyo-bee wah)

サモロビッチ^{えんそう}の演^{えん}奏^{そう}はない
 sa mo ro bi t chi no en sō wa na i
 sahmorobee'chee no enso-wah nai

わ。歌舞伎^{かぶき}に^にしまし^しょう。⑮
 wa. ka bu ki ni shi ma shō.
 (wah) (kahbookee nee sheemahsho-)

12 あたし^{きつぷ}が切^き符^ぷを^を買^かって
 a ta shi ga kippu o ka t te
 (ahtahshee gah kee'poo o kah'té)

おく^{おく}わ。⑯⑰
 o ku wa.
 (okoo wah)

13— じゃ^{じゃ}た^たの^のむ^むよ。⑱
 ja ta no mu yo.
 (jah tanomoo yo)

14— あ、これ^{せんしゅう}先^{せん}週^{しゅう}の^のぴあ^{ぴあ}よ。
 a, ko re sen shū no pi a yo.
 (ah koré senshu- no peeah yo) □

Notes

- ⑮ ない *nai*, low degree of ありません *arimasen*: *not exist*.
 ⑯ あたし the pronunciation *atashi* for *me* (from *watashi*) is only used by women.
 ⑰ おく *oku*, low degree of おきます *okimasu*: *do in advance*.
 ⑱ たのむ *tanomu*, low degree of たのみます *tanomimasu*: *to ask for*; actually, this corresponds to the familiar conversation use of a formula we have often come across おねがい します ▶

- 11 Ah, wait a minute. Tuesday there's no Samorovitch recital. It'll have to be kabuki.
(ah / a bit / wait) (Tuesday / [emphasis] / Samorovitch / [relation] / recital / [announce] / not exist / [softener]) (kabuki / [goal] / let's do)
- 12 I'll get the tickets.
(me / [subject] / ticket / [object] / buy / do in advance / [softener])
- 13 – Okay, I'm depending on you.
(good / ask a favor / [engagement])
- 14 – Ah, this is *The Pia* from last week!
(ah / this / last week / [relation] / Pia / [engagement])



- ▶ **onagai shimasu** (cf. Lesson 16, item 13; Lesson 19, item 14). and really means *please*.

So there, that's it. It was a bit tough, but now we're past it. In this lesson's notes, we have faithfully indicated each time we have used a low verb form. But we won't do it anymore, promise. That would be a little too monotonous, wouldn't it? Because for verbs, there is actually an easy trick to help you recognize low degree forms: they are just all the forms that don't end with **ます masu**, **ません masen**, **ました mashita**, **ませんでした masen deshita**, or **ましょう mashō** (cf. Lesson 7, paragraph 1). So you are more than capable of noting low form verbs on your own.

Exercise 1

- ① 一緒に買物に行かない？
 iss^いsh^しo ni kai^{かい}mo^{もの}no ni i^いkanai?
- ② 火曜日にテレビで見た映画は
 kayō^かbi ni tere^てbi de mi^みta eiga wa
 中国の映画でした。
 chū^{ちゅう}goku no eiga deshita.
- ③ またどこかに忘れました。
 mata dokoka ni wasure^{わす}mashita.
- ④ 今日本にきているフランス
 ima nihon ni kite iru furansu
 の歌手が歌っている歌を
 no kashu ga utatte iru uta o

Exercise 2

...に言葉を入れなさい。

- ① I think it's Tuesday.

- ② I want to eat apples.
 ringo .. tabe ... desu
- ③ It is on the television.

き
聞きましたか。

kikimashita ka.

- ⑤ 音楽会 は 百七 ページ に 出で
ongakkai wa hyaku nana pēji ni dete

います。
imasu.

- ⑥ 先週 から やっている 「四谷怪談」
senshū kara yatte iru yotsuya kaidan

が ぜひ 見たい です。
ga zehi mitai desu.

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Won't you go shopping with me? ② The movie we saw on television on Tuesday was a Chinese film. ③ I forgot it somewhere again. ④ Have you heard the songs by that French singer who is in Japan right now? ⑤ The concerts are on page 107. ⑥ I absolutely want to see *Ghosts of Yotsuya* that has been showing since last week.

- ④ Which do you prefer, theatre or kabuki?
shibai .. kabuki no
- ⑤ I think there isn't any news at this time.
ima no jikan wa nyūsu wa

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① kayōbi da to omoimasu. ② - ga - tai -, ③ terebi no ue ni arimasu.
④ - to - to dochi ga ii -, ⑤ - nai to omoimasu.

30 第三十課

dai san juk ka (dai san ju'kah)

なつ やす
夏 休み

natsu yasu mi
(nahtsoo yahsoomee)

- 1- お ^{ひさ}久しぶり ですね。きれい
o hisa shi bu ri de su ne. ki re i
(o) (heesahsheebooree dés' né) (keeréee
に ^{こむぎ}小麦 ^{いろ}色 に ^や焼けましたね。①
ni ko mugi iro ni ya ke mashi ta ne.
nee komoogee eero nee yahkémahshtah né)

- 2 夏 ^{なつ}休み ^{やす}はどこへ ^い行った
natsu yasu mi wa do ko e i t ta
(nahtsoo yahsoomee wah doko é ee'tah

の ^{です}か。②
no de su ka.
(no dés' kah)

- 3- ^{おおしま}大島へ ^い行って ^きました。
oo shima e i t te ki ma shita.
(o-sheemah é ee'té keemahshtah)

Notes

- ① One of the uses of the particle に ni is to allow expressions to do the work of adverbs (cf. Lesson 8, note 2, and Lesson 14, paragraph 3). We have often come across this use in the phrase ^{いっしょ}一緒に *issho ni, together*. Here we see two other examples. ▶

Summer Vacation

(summer-vacation)

- 1 – It's been a long time since I've seen you! What a beautiful tan, as golden as wheat!
(a long time since / it is / [agreement]) (beautiful / [adverb] / wheat-color / [adverb] / be tan / [agreement])
- 2 Where were you for vacation?
(summer-vacation / [announce] / where / [destination] / went / it is / [question])
- 3 – I went to Ōshima.
(Ōshima / [destination] / go / came)

8038022

きれいに小麦色に焼けましたね。



- ▶ ② In Japanese we often find **のです no desu** at the end of a sentence. It adds a slight nuance to an explanation. **行きました ikimashita**, *I went*; **行ったのです itta no desu**, *it's that I went*. But note: in front of **のです no desu**, you have to use the low degree.

4 ^{せ と ない かい} 瀬戸内海 ^{にし} の 西 ^に に ある ^{しま} 島
 se to nai kai no nishi ni a ru shima
 (sétonaikai no neeshee nee ahroo sheemah)

です。その名物はみかん
 de su. so ko no meibutsu wa mi ka n
 dés') (soko no mé-bootsoo wah meekan)

です。③

de su.
 dés')

5 そこは太陽の光が
 so ko wa tai yō no hikari ga
 (soko wah taiyo- no heekahree gah)

^{つよ}強い です。

tsuyo i de su.
 tsooyoeé dés')

6 ですから、一日中泳ぐか
 de su ka ra, ichi nichi jū oyogu ka
 (dés' kahrah eecheeneecheeju- oyogoo kah)

^{ひる ね}昼寝 しか できません。④

hiru ne shi ka de ki ma se n.

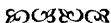
heeroo né sheekah dékeemahsen)

7 毎朝六時半に起きました。
 mai asa roku ji han ni o ki mashi ta.
 (maheeahsah rokoo jee han nee okeemahshtah)

そして海へ泳ぎに行きました。

so shi te umi e oyo gi ni i ki ma shi ta.
 (soshté oomee é oyogee nee eekeemahshtah)

- 4 It's an island located in the west Inland Sea of Japan. They're famous for tangerines.
(Inland Sea / [relation] / west / [place] / exist / island / it is) (there / [relation] / specialty / [announce] / tangerine / it is)
- 5 The sun is very bright over there.
(there / [announce] / sun / [relation] / light / [subject] / be strong / it is)
- 6 Because of this, you can do nothing but swim or sleep all day.
(because of this / all day / swim / or else / nap / except / not be possible)
- 7 I got up every morning at 6:30. Then I went to the sea to swim.
(every morning / six-o'clock-half / [time] / got up) (then / sea / [destination] / swim / [goal] / went)

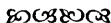


Notes

- ③ 瀬戸内海 *setonakai*, the Inland Sea. This sea separates the three large islands that make up Japan. Spotted with islands and islets of all sizes, it is home to some of the most beautiful scenery in the Japanese archipelago.
- ④ A grammatical pattern to know well: *しか* **shika** + verb in the negative = *only*, or *nothing but*.

- 8 その ^{じ かん}時間 は ^{かい がん}海岸 に
 so no ji kan wa kai gan ni
 (sono jeekan wah kaigan nee)
 だれも いません。
 da re mo i ma se n.
 (dahrémo eemahsen)
- 9 朝日 ^{あさ ひ}が ^{すい へい せん}水平線 から ^で出て くる
 asa hi ga sui hei sen ka ra de te ku ru
 (ahsahhee gah sooëhé-sen kahrah déte kooroo)
 眺め ^{なが}は すばらしい です。
 naga me wa su ba ra shi i de su.
 (nahgahmé wah soobahrahshee-dés')
- 10 日中 ^{にっ ちゅう}は とても ^{あつ}暑い です。村 ^{むら}
 nit chū wa to temo atsu i de su. mura
 (nee'chu- wah totémo ahtsooee dés') (moorah
^{ひと}の ^{はたら}人は ^{わたくし}働いて いますが 私
 no hito wa hatara i te i ma su ga watakushi
 (no heeto wah hahtahraheeté eemahs' gah wahtahkooshee
^{ひる ね}は ^{ひる}昼寝 を ^ねして いました。⑤
 wa hiru ne o shi te i ma shi ta.
 (wah heerooné o sheeté eemahshtah)
- 11 島 ^{しま}で ^た食べた ^{さかな}魚 や ^{かい るい}貝類 は
 shima de ta be ta sakana ya kai rui wa
 (sheemah dé tabétah sahkanah yah kairooee wah)
 とても おいしかった です。⑥
 to te mo o i shi ka t ta de su.
 (totémo oeesheekah'tah dés')

- 8 At that time no one else would be on the beach.
(*that / time / [announce] / shore / [place] / no one / wasn't there*)
- 9 The view of the sun rising over the horizon is wonderful.
(*sun rise / [subject] / sea horizon / from / exit / come / view / [announce] / be wonderful / it is*)
- 10 The daytime is very hot. The people in the village were at work, but I was napping.
(*middle of the day / [announce] / very / be hot / it is*) (*village / [relation] / person / [announce] / be working / but // I / [announce] / nap / [object] / was doing*)
- 11 The fish and shellfish I ate on the island were delicious.
(*island / [place] / ate / fish / and / shellfish / [announce] / very / were good / it is*)



Notes

- ⑤ して いました **shite imashita**. You can guess. It's just the past-tense form of して います **shite imasu**.
して います **shite imasu**, *I (you, he...) am/are/is doing*
して いました **shite imashita**, *I (you, he...) was/were doing, I did.*
- ⑥ おいしかった です **oishikatta desu**. おいしかった **oishikatta** is the past-tense form of おいしい **oishii**, *taste good*. おいしい **oishii** on its own means *taste good* (low degree), and おいしかった **oishikatta** alone means *tasted good* (low degree). The following です **desu** indicates that the adjective is actually in the middle degree.

12 その ^ひ日 に ^つ釣れた ^{さかな}魚 です
 so no hi ni tsu re ta sakana de su
 (sono hee nee tsoorétah sahkanah dés')

から、とても ^{しんせん}新鮮 です。
 ka ra, to te mo shin sen de su.
 kahrah totémo sheensén dés')

13 また ^{らいねん}来年 の ^{なつ}夏 も ^い行く
 ma ta rai nen no natsu mo i ku
 (mahtah rainen no nahtsoo mo eekoo

つもり です。
 tsu mo ri de su.
 tsoomoree dés')

14 - うらやましい です ね。
 u ra ya ma shi i de su ne.
 (oorahyahmahshee dés' né) □

れん しゅう

練習 renshū

Exercise 1

① ^{あに}兄 は ^お起きて いましたが、^{わたくし}私 は
 ani wa okite imashita ga, watakushi wa
^ね寝て いました。
 nete imashita.

② フランスの ^{にし}西 にある ^{むら}村 に ^い行った
 furansu no nishi ni aru mura ni itta
 のです。
 no desu.

- 12 Because the fish were caught just that day, they were very fresh.
(that / day / [time] / caught / fish / it is / because // very / fresh / it is)
- 13 I'll be going back next summer!
(again / next year / [relation] / summer / also / go / intention / it is)
- 14 – How I envy you!
(be envious / it is / [agreement])

練習問題

- ③ その^{しま}島で^た食べたみかんはとても
sono shima de tabeta mikan wa totemo

おいしかったですが、ビール
oishikatta desu ga, bīru

は とても ^{たか}高かったです。
wa totemo takakatta desu.

- ④ すぐ ^い行きましたが、だれも
sugu ikimashita ga, daremo

いませんでした。
imasen deshita.

- ⑤ ここからは^{うみ}海しか^み見えません。
koko kara wa umi shika miemasen.

Answers to Exercise 1

① My brother was awake, but I was sleeping. ② (It's that) I went to a village in the west of France. ③ The tangerines I ate on that island were delicious, but the beer was very expensive. ④ I went there right away, but no one was there. ⑤ You can't see anything but sea from here.

30 Exercise 2

... に ^{こと} ^ば 言葉 を ^い 入れ なさい

- ① Until eight in the morning there is no one.
gozen made
- ② I think I'll go at half past eleven.
. omoimasu
- ③ My son only drinks fruit juice.
. jūsu nomi
- ④ There are only books in Japanese or in Chinese.
. no hon
.

31 ^{だい} ^{さん} ^{じゅう} ^{いつ} ^か 第三十一課

dai san jū ik ka (dai san ju- ee'kah)

バーゲン

bā ge n

(bah-gen)

1 - ^{りょ} ^{こう} 旅行 に ^で 出る ^{まえ} 前に、^{ちい} 小さい

ryo kō ni de ru mae ni, chii sa i
(ryoko- nee déroo mahé nee chee-sai)

^て ^{さげ} 手提 ^{かばん} 鞆 と ^{さん} ^{まい} タオル を 三枚 と

te sage kaban to ta o ru o san mai to
tésahgé kahban to tahoroo o sanmai to

^{こう} ^{すい} 香水 が ^か 買いたいです。①

kō sui ga ka i ta i de su.
ko-sooee gah kaheetai dés')

- ⑤ That's a road I walk along often.
..... aruku

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - hachi ji - daremo imasen. ② jū ichi ji han ni iku to -. ③ musuko wa - shika - masen. ④ nihongo ka chūgokugo - shika arimasen. ⑤ yoku - michi desu.
-

Lesson Thirty One 31

On Sale

(bargain)

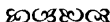
- 1 - Before going on vacation, I want to buy a small tote bag, three towels, and perfume.
(travel / [goal] / leave / before / [time] // be small / tote bag / and / towel / [object] / three-sheet / and / perfume / [subject] / be object of desire of purchase / it is)

Notes

- ① 手提鞆 ^{てしげかばん} **tesagekaban**, a *tote bag* of the sort one might use to go grocery shopping. They're very common in Japan for shopping, and they are sold everywhere in leather, cloth, plastic, and heavy paper.

- 2- 今 ^{いま} 三越 ^{みつこし} デパートがバーゲン
 ima mitsu koshi de pā to ga bā ge n
 (eemah meetsookoshee dépah-to gah bah-gen
 をしていますから、そこで
 o shi te i ma su ka ra, so ko de
 o sheeté eemahs' kahrah soko dé
^か
 買いましょう。②
 ka i ma shō.
 kaheemahsho-)
- 3 散歩 ^{さんぽ} がてら ^{とうきょう} 東京 ^{えき} 駅 から
 san po ga te ra tō kyō eki ka ra
 (sanpo gahterah to-kyo- ékee kahrah
^{ある} ^い
 歩いて 行きましょう。③
 aru i te i ki ma shō.
 ahrooeté eekeemahsho-)
- 4- それは ^{かんが} いい 考え です ね。
 so re wa i i kanga e de su ne.
 (soré wah ee- kangahé dés' né)
- 5- あ、^{あめ} 雨 ^ふ が 降って きました から、
 a, ame ga fu t te ki ma shi ta ka ra,
 (ah ahmé gah foo'té keemahshtah kahrah
^ち ^か ^{てつ} ^の
 地下鉄 に 乗りましょう。④
 chi ka tetsu ni no ri ma shō.
 cheekahtétsoo nee noreemahsho-)
- 6 タオル は ^{いろ} どんな 色 が
 ta o ru wa do n na iro ga
 (tahoroo wah do'nah eero gah
 いい ですか。
 i i de su ka.
 ee- dés' kah)

- 2 – There's a sale at Mitsukoshi right now, let's go buy them there!
(now / Mitsukoshi-department store / [subject] / sale / [object] / be doing / because // there / [place] / let's buy)
- 3 Why don't we take a walk, then from there step over to Tōkyō Station!
(walk / while doing / Tōkyō Station / from / walking / let's go)
- 4 – That's a great idea!
(that / [announce] / be good / idea / it is / [agreement])
- 5 – Ah! It's starting to rain, let's take the subway!
(ah / rain / [subject] / fall / came / because // subway / [goal] / take)
- 6 What color towels do you want?
(towel / [announce] / what kind / color / [subject] / be good / it is / [question])



Notes

- ② 三越 みつこし デパート Mitsukoshi depāto, the oldest department store in Tōkyō. The equivalent of Bloomingdale's or Harrods.
- ③ 東京 とうきょう 駅 えき Tōkyō eki. Tōkyō is teeming with stations, because urban transportation is mostly taken care of by trains. But 東京 とうきょう 駅 えき Tōkyō eki is Tōkyō Station, located in the east part of the city, which is the principal departure point for all main train lines.
- ④ The Japanese use から *kara* very often to link two sentences, and though から *kara* means *because*, it is used much more often in Japanese than this word in English.

7- あそこにかかっている赤い
 a so ko ni ka ka t te i ru aka i
 (ahsoko nee kahkah'té eeroo ahkai

タオルと青いタオルをペア
 ta o ru to ao i ta o ru o pe a
 tahoroo to ahoeé tahoroo o péah

で買いましょう。

de ka i ma shō.
 dé kaheemahsho-)

8- それと三枚目にはその横
 so re to san mai me ni wa sono yoko
 (soré to san mai mé nee wah sono yoko

にある白いタオルはいかが。
 ni a ru shiro i ta o ru wa i kaga.
 nee ahroo sheeroee tahoroo wah eekahgah)

9- あ、この傘は安いですね。
 a, ko no kasa wa yasu i de su ne.
 (ah kono kahsah wah yahsooee dés' né)

10 主人がこの間姉から
 shu jin ga ko no aida ane ka ra
 (shujeen gah kono aidah ané kahrah

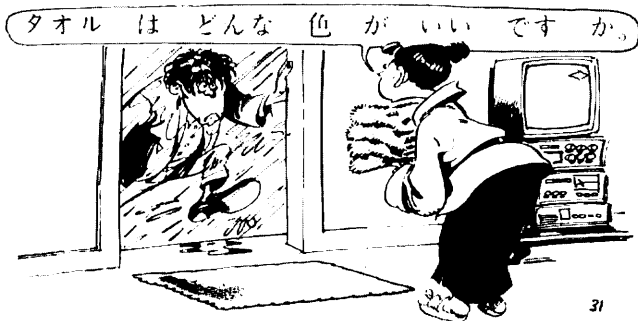
もらった傘を電車に忘れた
 mo ra t ta kasa o den sha ni wasu re ta
 morah'tah kahsah o denshah nee wahsoorétah

のですよ。

no de su yo.
 no dés' yo)

- 7 – Why don't we buy the red towel and the blue towel hanging up over there as a pair.
(over there / [place] / be hanging / be red / towel / and / be blue / towel / [object] / pair / [means] / let's buy)
- 8 – And for the third towel, how about that white towel just to the side?
(that / and / three-sheet-th / [goal] / [emphasis] / that / side / [place] / exist / be white / towel / [announce] / how)
- 9 – Ah, this umbrella is pretty cheap!
(ah / this / umbrella / [announce] / be cheap / it is / [agreement])
- 10 Just the other day, my husband left the umbrella his sister gave him on the train.
(my husband / [subject] / this / time interval / older sister / from / received / umbrella / [object] / train / [place] / forgot / it's that / [engagement])

タオル



31

- 11 あら、この ^{みずいろ}水色 の ^{ふち}縁 が
 a ra, ko no mizu iro no fuchi ga
 (ahrah kono meezoo eero no foochee gah)
 ついた ^{やす}ガウン も 安い ですね。
 tsu i ta ga u n mo yasui de su ne.
 (tsooeetah gahoon mo yahsooee dés' né)

^{いち}一 ^{じ かん}時間 ^ご後
 ichi ji kan go
 (eechee jeekan go)

- 12 さあ ^{かえ}帰りましょう。
 sa a kae ri ma shō.
 (sah- kahéreemahsho-)

- 13 ^{かえ}帰りに ^{ぎんこう}銀行 に ^よ寄って も
 kae ri ni gin kō ni yo t te mo
 (kahéree nee geenko- nee yo'té mo)

いい ですか。⑤
 i i de su ka.
 (ee- dés' kah)

- 14 お ^{かね}金を ^{ぜんぶ}全部 ^{つか}使って
 o kane o zen bu tsuka t te
 (o kah né o'zen boo tsoo kah'té)

しまいました ので…⑥⑦
 shi ma i ma shi ta no de.
 (sheemaheemahshtah no dé)

- 11 Oh, this robe with the blue edges is pretty cheap, too!
(oh / this / water-color / [relation] / edge / [subject] / be attached / robe / also / be cheap / it is / [agreement])

One hour later
(one-hour-after)

- 12 Okay, let's go home!
(well / let's return)
- 13 Can I stop by the bank on the way?
(return / [time] / bank / [goal] / stop by / even / be good / it is / [question])
- 14 It's just that I've spent all my money, so...
([familiarity]-money / [object] / entire / use-have done to completion / because)



Notes

- ⑤ This is the usual way of asking permission for something. Literally, "Even if I stop by the bank, is that okay?".
- ⑥ Contrary to what we are used to, Japanese people almost never use checks, and only occasionally will they use credit cards. For most purchases, even large ones, they use cash.
- ⑦ We have begun to see a number of patterns connecting two verbs with the 'て' at the end of the first verb, followed by a second. In this case, the phrase 使ってしまいました *tsukatte shimatta* indicates that she used all of her money, without really intending to. The Japanese are very fond of this construction, and will use it for everything from 'I failed my test' to 'I ate all the peanut butter'.



Exercise 1

- ① 観光 ^{かんこう} がてら ^{しごと} 仕事を ^を
kankō gatera shigoto o
するつもりです。

suru tsumori desu.

- ② 誕生日 ^{たんじょうび} に ^{あに} 兄 から ^{かばん} 鞆
tanjōbi ni ani kara kaban
をもらいました。

o moraimashita.

- ③ 毎朝 ^{まいあさ} 雨 ^{あめ} が ^ふ 降ります。

maiasa ame ga furimasu.

Exercise 2

... に ^{こと} 言葉 ^ば を ^い 入れなさい

- ① This teacup is cheap, I'll buy it.
kono chawan wa , kaimasu
- ② Can I watch the television?
terebi o mite
- ③ Before taking the bus, let's stop by the post office.
. noru yūbinkyoku .. yorimashō
- ④ What color is the car our neighbor bought?
tonari no hito ga katta jidōsha wa
.

① ジャズのコンサート

jazu no konsāto

が聞^ききたいな。

ga kikitai na.

⑤ 夜寝る前^{まへ}にコーヒー

yoru neru mae ni kōhī

は飲^のみません。

wa nomimasen.

Answers to Exercise 1

① I plan to work while sightseeing. ② For my birthday I got a bag from my brother. ③ It rains every morning. ④ I would like to hear a jazz concert. ⑤ I don't drink coffee before I go to bed at night.

⑤ Is it red, blue, or white?

akai desu ka

Answers to Exercise 2

① - yasui desu kara -. ② - mo ii desu ka. ③ basu ni - mae ni - ni -.
④ - donna iro desu ka. ⑤ - aoi desu ka shiroi desu ka.

dai san jū ni ka (dai san ju- nee kah)

こうそく どうろ

高速道路

kō soku dō ro

(ko-sokoodo-ro)

1 - おじ が 自動車 を 貸して
o ji ga ji dōsha o ka shi te

(ojee gah jeedo-shah o kahsheeté

くれた ので、先週 の 週末、
ku re ta no de, sen shū no shū matsu,

koo ré tah no dé senshu- no shu- mahtsoo

会社 の 同僚 と 関西 旅行 を
kai sha no dō ryō to kan sai ryo kō o

kaishah no do-ryo- to kansai ryoko- o

する つもり で 出発 しました。①
su ru tsu mo ri de shup patsu shi mashi ta.

sooro tsoomoree dé shu'pahtsoo sheemahshtah)

2 - いかが でした か。
i ka ga deshi ta ka.

(eekahgah déshtah kah)

3 - 最初 は 国道 を 走りましたが、
sai sho wa koku dō o hashi ri mashi ta ga,

(saisho wah kokudo- o hasheereemahshtah gah

混んで いました ので、高速道路
ko n de i mashi ta no de, kō soku dō ro

kondé eemahshtah no dé ko-sokoodo-ro

で 行く こと に しました。
de i ku ko to ni shimashi ta.

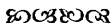
dé eekoo koto nee sheemahshtah)

Lesson Thirty-Two 32

The Highway

(highway)

- 1 – Because my uncle lent me his car, a colleague of mine and I took off last weekend for a little vacation in Kansai.
(my uncle / [subject] / car / [object] / lend / have done for me / because // last week / [relation] / weekend / company / [relation] / colleague / [partnership] / Kansai-trip / [object] / do / intention / [means] / depart-did)
- 2 – How was it?
(how / it was / [question])
- 3 – First I took the National Road, but traffic was heavy, so we decided to take the highway.
(first / [emphasis] / national road / [object] / ran / but // was packed / because // highway / [means] / go / fact of / [goal] / did)



Notes

- ① 関西 *Kansai*. This term indicates a region in the West part of Japan's main island. It is the region where the former capital Kyōto and the important commercial city of Ōsaka are located.

- 4 On the highways the speed limit is 80 km/hr, so I didn't make much progress.
(highway / [place] / [emphasis] / speed-limit / [subject] / eight-ten-kilometer / it is / because // fast / did not advance)
- 5 Also, there were a lot of trucks.
(furthermore / truck / [subject] / many / was running)
- 6 It's hard to pass trucks.
(truck / [object] / overtake / fact of / [announce] / be difficult / it is)
- 7 Before long you're speeding.
(right away / speed-violation / [goal] / become)
- 8 That's why traveling by car in Japan takes a lot of time.
(for this reason / Japan / [place] / [relation] / car-travel / [announce] / time / [subject] / take)

おもしろ



Notes

- ② cf. Lesson 30, note 5.

9 ^{いそ}急いで ^{いる} いる ^{とき} 時 ^は は ^{きしゃ} 汽車 ^か か
 iso i de i ru toki wa ki sha ka
 (eesoedé eeroo tokee wah keeshah kah)

^{ひこうき}飛行機 ^で で ^{りょこう} 旅行 ^{した} した ^{ほう} 方 ^が が
 hi kō ki de ryokō shi ta hō ga
 heeko-kee dé ryoko- sheetah ho- gah

^{はや}早い ^{です。} です。③

haya i de su.
 hahyai dés')

10 ^{それ} それに ^{こうそくどうろ} 高速道路 ^は は ^{いつも} いつも
 so re ni kō sokudō ro wa i tsu mo
 (sorénee ko-sokoodo-ro wah eetsoomo)

^{ゆうりょう}有料 ^{です} ですから ^{たか} 高く ^{つきます。} つきます。
 yū ryō de su ka ra takaku tsuki masu.
 (yu-ryo- dés' kahrah tahkahkoo tsookeemahs')

11 - ^{かんさい}関西 ^は は ^い いか ^が が ^で でした ^{か。} か。
 kan sai wa i ka ga de shi ta ka.
 (kansai wah eekahgah déshtah kah)

12 - ^{それが} それ ^が が... ^{しずおか} 静岡 ^{あた} 辺り ^で で ^{スピード} スピード
 so re ga... shizu oka ata ri de su pī do
 (soré gah) (sheezookah ahtahree dé soopeedo)

^{いはん}違反 ^で で ^{ぱと} パトカー ^に に ^{つか} 捉ま ^{って} って
 i han de pa to kā ni tsuka ma t te
 eehan dé pahtokah- nee tsookahmah'té

^{しま} しまいました。 ^{すご} すごい ^{ばっ} 罰金 ^を を
 shi ma i ma shi ta. su go i bak kin o
 sheemaheemahshtah) (soogoe bah'keen o)

^{はら}払 ^う う ^{こと} こと ^に に ^な りました。④⑤
 hara u ko to ni na ri ma shi ta.
 hahrahoo koto nee nahreemahshtah)

9 When you're in a hurry, it's faster to travel by train or airplane.

(hurry / time / [emphasis] // train / or else / airplane / [means] / travel-did / side / [subject] / be fast / it is)

10 What's more, because there are tolls on all the highways, it gets expensive.

(furthermore / highway / [announce] / always / cost money / it is / because // be expensive / arrive)

11 – And how was Kansai?

(Kansai / [announce] / how / it was / [question])

12 – Oh, that... Around Shizuoka, we were stopped by a police car for speeding. I had to pay a huge fine!

(that / [subject]) (Shizuoka-around / [place] / speed-violation / [means] / police car / [agent] / was caught / finish by doing) (be amazing / fine / [object] / pay / fact of / [goal] / became)



Notes

- ③ There are two words that mean *train*: 電車 **densha** means trains used for urban transportation (as well as for suburban commutes) and 汽車 **kisha** means long-distance trains.
- ④ 静岡 **Shizuoka**, an important city located on the coast, roughly 150 km (about 90 miles) South-West of Tōkyō.
- ⑤ The words we have been seeing in *katakana* (cf. Introduction, p. XI) have until now been written out fully in their borrowings from English. But very often Japanese will abbreviate these words as well. We have seen one example: ビル **biru** (Lesson 24, item 10), abbreviation of ビルディング **birudingu building** –but here is another: パトカー **pato kā**, which is an abbreviation of パトロールカー **patororu kā, patrol car**. As you can see, the result of these abbreviations is sometimes quite a mystery, or even ambiguous. キロ **kiro** is an abbreviation for “kilo(meter)”, but also for “kilo(gram)”!

- 13 それで 予算^{よさん} が 足り^たなく なった
 so re de yosan ga ta ri na ku na t ta
 (sorédé yosan gah tahreenahkoo nah'tah)
- ので、そのまま 東京^{とうきょう} に
 no de, so no ma ma tōkyō ni
 nodé sonomahmah to-kyo- nee
- 戻^{もど}りました。
 modori mashi ta.
 modoreemahshtah)

□

れん しゅう
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

- ① 姉^{あね} は いい 店^{みせ} を 教^{おし}えて くれ ました。
 ane wa ii mise o oshiete kuremashita.
- ② 汽^き車^{しゃ} で 行^いった 方^{ほう} が 便^{べん}利^り です。
 kisha de itta hō ga benri desu.
- ③ 雨^{あめ} が 降^ふって いた ました から、地^ち下^か鉄^{てつ}
 ame ga futte imashita kara, chikatetsu
 で 行^いく こと に しま した。
 de iku koto ni shimashita.

- 13 So, since we were over budget already, we went directly back to Tōkyō. 32
(so / budget / [subject] / not be enough / became / because // just like that / Tōkyō / [goal] / returned)

- ④ 今日^{きょう}は日曜日^{にちようび}なので、銀行^{ぎんこう}
kyō wa nichiyōbi na node, ginkō
はお休み^{やす}です。
wa o yasumi desu.
- ⑤ 家賃^{やちん}が高^{たか}くなったのです。
yachin ga takaku natta no desu.

Answers to Exercise 1

- ① My sister told me about an excellent restaurant. ② It's more convenient to go by train. ③ Because it was raining, I decided to go by subway. ④ It's Sunday, so the banks are closed. ⑤ It's that the rent has become expensive.

- ④ I was writing a postcard.
hagaki o kai
- ⑤ I decided to get up early.
hayaku okiru
- ⑥ It is hard to stop smoking.
kin.en suru desu

Answers to Exercise 2

- ① – ku nari –. ② – na – ginkō no mae de. ③ – jikan ga kakarimasu. ④ – te imashita. ⑤ – koto ni shimashita. ⑥ – koto wa musukashii –.

Lesson Thirty-Three 33

Hachikō

- 1 – What is the bronze statue of a dog in front of
Shibuya station?
(Shibuya-station / [relation] / before / [place] / exist / dog / [relation] / bronze statue / [announce] / what / it is / [question])
- 2 – That's the statue of a dog named Hachikō.
(this / [announce] / Hachikō / [quotation] / say / dog / [relation] / bronze statue / it is)



3- なぜ ^{いぬ} 犬 の ^{どうぞう} 銅像 など を
 na ze inu no dō zō na do o
 (nahzé eenoo no do-zo- nahdo o)

作った ^{つく} の ですか。
 tsuku t ta no de su ka.
 (tsookoo'tah no dés' kah)

4- これは ^{はな} 話す と ^{なが} 長く
 ko re wa hana su to naga ku
 (koré wah hahnahsoo to nahgahkoo)

なります が…
 na ri ma su ga.
 (nahreemahs' gah)

5 ハチ公 ^{こう} と いう ^{いぬ} 犬 は とても
 ha chi kō to i u inu wa to te mo
 (hahcheeko- to eeu eenoo wah totémo)

感心 ^{かんしん} な ^{いぬ} 犬 でした。①
 kan shin na inu deshi ta.
 (kansheen nah eenoo déshtah)

6 六十年 ^{ろくじゅうねん} 前 ^{まえ} の こと です。
 roku jū nen mae no ko to de su.
 (rokooju- nen mahé no koto dés')

7 上野 ^{うえの} 英三郎 ^{えいさぶろう} さん と いう
 ue no ei sabu rō sa n to i u
 (ooéno é-sahbooro- san to eeu)

大学 ^{だいがく} の ^{せんせい} 先生 が いました。
 dai gaku no sensei ga i mashita.
 (daigahkoo no sensé- gah eemahshtah)

- 3 – And why did they build a statue of a dog there? 33
(why / dog / [relation] / bronze statue-this kind of thing / [object] / made / it's that / [question])
- 4 – It's a long story...
(this / [announce] / speak / when // be long / become / but)
- 5 This dog called Hachikō was a very moving dog.
(Hachikō / [quotation] / say / dog / [announce] / very / wonderful / it is / dog / it was)
- 6 It was 60 years ago.
(six-ten-years-before / [relation] / thing / it is)
- 7 There was a university professor named Ueno Eisaburō.
(Ueno Eisaburō-Mr. / [quotation] / say / university / [relation] / professor / [subject] / existed)



Notes

- ① 感心^{かんしん}な^い犬 *kanshin na inu*. cf. also Lesson 32, item 4. This な *na* is the form that takes です *desu*, *it is*, in the position we call “within a sentence or phrase”. We will often find this な *na*, whenever we have to say *it is*, before ので *node*, *because*.

8 ハチ公^{こう} と いう 犬^{いぬ} を
 ha chi kō to i u inu o

(hahcheeko- to eeu eenoo o

飼^かって いました。

ka t te i ma shi ta.

kah'té eemahshtah)

9 毎朝^{まいあさ} 上野^{うえの} さん が 大学^{だいがく} へ
 mai asa ue no sa n ga dai gaku e

(maiahsah ooéno san gah daigahkoo é

行く^い 時^{とき}、ハチ公^{こう} は いつも 駅^{えき}
 i ku toki, ha chi kō wa i tsu mo eki

eeekoo tokee hahcheeko- wah eetsoomo ékee

まで おく^いって 行^いきました。

ma de o ku t te i ki ma shi ta.

mahdé okoo'té eekeemahshtah)

10 夕方^{ゆうがた} 上野^{うえの} さん が 大学^{だいがく} から
 yū gata ue no sa n ga dai gaku ka ra

(yu-gahtah ooéno san gah daigahkoo kahrah

帰^{かえ}って くる 時^{とき}、ハチ公^{こう} は
 kaet te ku ru toki, ha chi kō wa

kahé'té kooroo tokee hahcheeko- wah

かならず 迎^{むか}え に 行^いきました。

ka na ra zu muka e ni i ki ma shi ta.

kahnahrahzoo mookahé nee eekeemahshtah)

11 - かわい^{いぬ}い 犬^{いぬ} です ね。

ka wa i i inu de su ne.

(kahwahee- eenoo dés' né)

(続^{つづ}く)

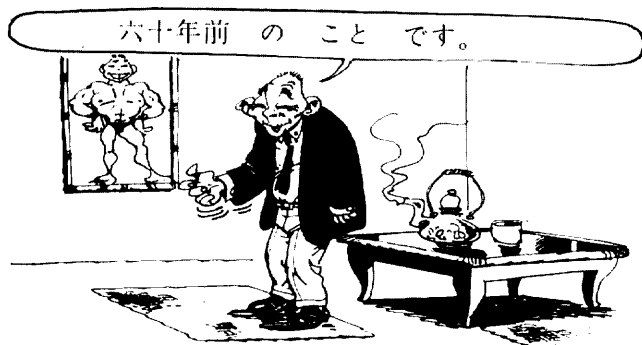
tsuzu ku

(tsoozookoo) □

- 8 He had a dog called Hachikō.
(Hachikō / [quotation] say / dog / [object] / was raising)
- 9 Every morning when Mr. Ueno went to the university, Hachikō would always see him off to the station.
(every morning / Ueno-Mr. / [subject] / university / [destination] / go / time // Hachikō / [announce] / always / station / until / see off / went)
- 10 And in the evening when Mr. Ueno came back from the university, Hachikō would always meet him there without fail.
(evening / Ueno-Mr. / [subject] / university / from / return / come / time // Hachikō / [announce] / without fail / meet / [goal] / went)
- 11 – What a great dog!
(be adorable / dog / it is / [agreement])

to be continued

~~~~~



## Exercise 1

- ① <sup>おそ</sup>遅くなりましたから、<sup>かえ</sup>帰りましょう。  
osoku narimashita kara, kaerimashō.
- ② <sup>こばやし</sup>小林 <sup>まさこ</sup>正子 という <sup>ひと</sup>人を知って  
kobayashi masako to iu hito o shitte  
いますか。  
imasu ka.
- ③ <sup>まいあさ</sup>毎朝 <sup>こども</sup>子供を <sup>ようちえん</sup>幼稚園におくって  
maiasa kodomo o yōchien ni okutte  
いきます。  
ikimasu.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 を <sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① This happened two hundred years ago.  
.....
- ② He's an admirable person.  
.....
- ③ Why don't you go there by highway?  
.... kōsokudōro de .....
- ④ She's a person named Uehara Michiko.  
uehara michiko .....

- ④ タオルは一枚しか買いません  
taoru wa ichi mai shika kaimasen

でした。

deshita.

- ⑤ 夕方会社から帰る時、いつも隣  
yūgata kaisha kara kaeru toki, itsumo tonari

の本屋さんの犬に会います。  
no honya san no inu ni aimasu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① It's late, let's go home. ② Do you know somebody called Kobayashi Masako? ③ Every morning I take the children to kindergarten. ④ I only bought one towel. ⑤ When I come back from the office at night, I always meet the dog from the bookstore next door.

\*\*\*

- ⑤ When I go on a trip, I always take an umbrella.

....., ..... motte  
ikimasu

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① ni hyaku nen mae no koto desu. ② kanshin na hito desu ③ naze – ikanai no desu ka. ④ – to iu hito desu. ⑤ ryokō ni deru toki, itsumo kasa o –.

だい さん じゅうよん か  
第三十四課

dai san jū yon ka (dai san ju- yon kah)

ふ どう さん や  
不動産屋 さん  
fu dō san ya sa n  
(foodo-sanyah san)

- 1 - <sup>あおやま</sup>青山 <sup>あた</sup>辺りに <sup>いえ</sup>家を <sup>さが</sup>搜して  
ao yama ata ri ni ie o saga shi te  
(ahoyahmah ahtahree nee eeé o sahghasheeté  
いる <sup>なに</sup>の <sup>です</sup> <sup>が</sup>、何か  
i ru no de su ga, nani ka  
eeroo no dés'gah nanee kah  
ありません <sup>か</sup>。①②  
a ri ma se n ka.  
ahreemahsen kah)
- 2 - <sup>あぱと</sup>アパート <sup>です</sup> <sup>か</sup>、<sup>いっけんや</sup>一軒家 <sup>です</sup> <sup>か</sup>。  
a pā to de su ka, ik ken ya de su ka.  
(ahpah-to dés' kah ee'kenyah dés' kah)
- 3 - <sup>にわ</sup>庭 <sup>つき</sup> <sup>の</sup> <sup>いっけんや</sup>一軒家 <sup>に</sup>  
niwa tsu ki no ik ken ya ni  
(neewah tsookee no ee'kenyah nee  
<sup>す</sup>住 <sup>みたい</sup>たい <sup>です</sup>。  
su mi ta i de su.  
soomeetai dés')
- 4 <sup>にわ</sup>庭 <sup>は</sup> <sup>おお</sup> <sup>ほう</sup> <sup>が</sup> <sup>いい</sup> <sup>です</sup>。③  
niwa wa oo ki i hō ga i i de su.  
(neewah wah o-kee- ho- gah ee- dés')

---

## Lesson Thirty-Four 34

### At the Real Estate Agent's

(real estate-store-Mr.)

- 1 – I'm looking for a house around Aoyama, you wouldn't have something like that, would you?  
(Aoyama-around / [place] / house / [object] / be looking for / it's that / but // anything / not exist / [question])
- 2 – Are you looking for an apartment, or for a house?  
(apartment / it is / [question] / individual house / it is / [question])
- 3 – I want to live in a house with a garden.  
(garden-attached / [relation] / individual house / [place] / want to live / it is)
- 4 – I would prefer a large garden.  
(garden / [announce] / be big / side / [subject] / be good / it is)



### Notes

- ① 青山 Aoyama, a part of one of the sections of Tōkyō. One of the most expensive neighborhoods in terms of property, in a city where real estate is already incredibly expensive!
- ② 何 nani: what, interrogative. 何か nanika: something, or anything.
- ③ 方が…です... hō ga...desu... The usual manner of marking preference in a comparison. Literally, “on the side of... it is...”  
庭は大きい方がいゝです  
niwa wa ookii hō ga ii desu  
literally: “for the garden, the direction of big is good”.

34 5 ダイニング と リビング は  
da i ni n gu to ri bi n gu wa  
(daineengoo to reebeengoo wah

<sup>わか</sup>別れて <sup>ほう</sup>いる 方 が いい です。  
waka re te i ru hō ga i i de su.  
wahkahrété eeroo ho-gah ee-dés')

6 妻 が お 茶 と 生 け 花 を  
tsuma ga o cha to i ke bana o  
(tsoomah gah o chah to eekébanah o

し ます から、<sup>はち</sup>八 <sup>じょう</sup>畳 ぐ ら い の  
shi ma su ka ra, hachi jō gu ra i no  
sheemahs' kahrah hahchee jo-gorai no

<sup>わ</sup>和 <sup>しつ</sup>室 も ほ し い です。④  
wa shitsu mo ho shi i de su.  
wahsheetsoo mo hoshee-dés')

7 車 が 二 台 入 る ガ レ ー ジ  
kuruma ga ni dai hai ru ga rē ji  
(kooroomah gah needai haheeroo gahré-jee

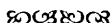
<sup>ひつよう</sup>も 必 要 です。⑤  
mo hitsu yō de su.  
mo heetsooyo-dés')

8- 台 所 は どう し ます か。  
dai dokoro wa dō shi ma su ka.  
(daidokoro wah do-sheemahs' kah)

9- お 客 が 多 い の で、<sup>きやく</sup>便 利 に  
o kyaku ga oo i no de, ben ri ni  
(o kyahkoo gah o-ee nodé benree nee

<sup>つか</sup>使 える <sup>だいでころ</sup>台 所 が い い です。⑥  
tsuka e ru dai dokoro ga i i de su.  
tsookahéeroo daidokoro gah ee dés')

- 5 I would prefer the dining room separate from the living room.  
*(dining room / and / living room / [announce] / be separate / [subject] / be good / it is)*
- 6 Because my wife practices tea ceremonies and flower arrangement, I also want a traditional-style Japanese room, around eight tatami in size.  
*(my wife / [subject] / [familiarity]-tea / and / flower arrangement / [object] / do / because // eight-tatami / around / [relation] / Japanese room / also / be desirable / it is)*
- 7 I also need a two-car garage.  
*(car / [subject] / two-vehicle / enter / garage / also / necessary / it is)*
- 8 – And what would you like for the kitchen?  
*(kitchen / [announce] / how / do / [question])*
- 9 – Since we have a lot of guests, we need a kitchen that's very easy to use.  
*([polite]-guest / [subject] / be many / because // convenient / [adverb] / can use / kitchen / [subject] / be good / it is)*



## Notes

- ④ The size of a room in a traditional Japanese house is measured by the length of tatami that covers the floor. A tatami is a thick mat (between 10 and 15 cm, or 4 to 6 inches) and designed for a person to lie down upon; thus, a tatami is 1.80 meters x 0.90 meters, or about 6 feet by 3 feet). In Japan, they speak of a 5 tatami room, 6 tatami room, 16 tatami room, etc.
- ⑤ 二台 <sup>に だい</sup> ni dai. 台 <sup>だい</sup> is a *measure word* used for counting vehicles and machines (cf. Lesson 22, note 3).
- ⑥ 便利 <sup>べんり</sup> に benri ni, cf. Lesson 30, note 1.

- 10 <sup>や ちん</sup> 家賃 は どのぐらい に  
 ya chin wa do nogu ra i ni  
 (yahcheen wah donogoorai nee  
 なります か。  
 na ri ma su ka.  
 nahreemahs' kah)
- 11 - <sup>いっ かげつ</sup> 一ヶ月 <sup>ひやく まん えん</sup> 百万円 です。⑦  
 ik ka getsu hyaku man en de su.  
 (ee'kahgétsoo hyahkoo man én dés')
- 12 それに <sup>しき きん</sup> 敷金 と <sup>れい きん</sup> 礼金 は  
 so re ni shiki kin to reikin wa  
 (sorénee sheekeekéen to ré-keen wah  
<sup>に かげつ</sup> <sup>ぶん</sup> 二ヶ月 分 です。  
 ni ka getsu bun de su.  
 neekahgétsoo boon dés')
- 13 だから <sup>にゅうきよ</sup> 入居 する <sup>とき</sup> 時 <sup>ぜんぶ</sup> 全部  
 da ka ra nyū kyo su ru toki zen bu  
 (dahkahrah nyu-kyo sooroo tokee zenboo  
 で <sup>ご</sup> <sup>ひやく まん えん</sup> 五百万円に なります。  
 de go hyaku man en ni na ri ma su.  
 dé go hyahkoo man en nee nahreemahs')
- 14 - そんな <sup>たか</sup> に 高い の です か。  
 so n na ni taka i no de su ka.  
 (so'nah nee tahkai no dés' kah  
<sup>わたくし</sup> 私 <sup>はら</sup> には 払う こと が  
 watakushi ni wa harau ko to ga  
 wahtahkooshee nee wah hahrahoo koto gah  
 できません。あきらめます。  
 de ki ma se n. a ki ra mema su.  
 dékeemahsen) (ahkeerahmémahs') □

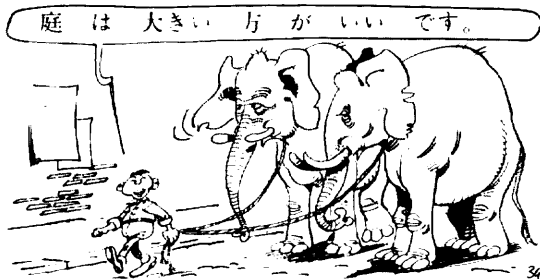


- 10 About how much will the rent be?  
(rent / [announce] / about how much / [goal] / become / [question])
- 11 – One million yen per month.  
(one month / hundred-ten thousand-yen / it is)
- 12 Also, the deposit and fees come to two months' rent.  
(furthermore / deposit / and / fee / [announce] / two months-part / it is)
- 13 So when you move in, you will have to pay five million yen.  
(so / move in-do / time // total / [means] / five-hundred-ten thousand-yen / [goal] / become)
- 14 – It's that expensive? I can't afford it. Never mind!  
(this way / [adverbial] / be expensive / it's that / [question])  
(me / [attribution] / [emphasis] / pay / fact of / [subject] / be impossible) (give up)



## Notes

- ⑦ <sup>いっかげつ</sup>一ヶ月 **ikkagetsu**: “duration of one month”. Pay special attention here to the writing. Between the two kanji is a small ケ (ke in *katakana*) pronounced ka. <sup>にっかげつ</sup>二ヶ月 **nikagetsu**, “duration of two months”, <sup>さんかげつ</sup>三ヶ月 **sankagetsu**, “duration of three months”, etc. (Very often this is now written 一か月).



## Exercise 1

- ① 何か 見え<sup>な</sup>ました<sup>み</sup> か。  
nanika miemashita ka.
- ② 早く<sup>はや</sup> 出発<sup>しゅっぱつ</sup> した<sup>ほう</sup> 方が<sup>ほう</sup> いい です。  
hayaku shuppatsu shita hō ga ii desu.
- ③ 子供<sup>こども</sup> が 多い<sup>おお</sup> ので、大きい<sup>おお</sup>  
kodomo ga ooi node, ookii  
くるま<sup>くるま</sup> が 必要<sup>ひつよう</sup> です。  
kuruma ga hitsuyō desu.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

... に 言葉<sup>ことば</sup> を 入れ<sup>い</sup> なさい

- ① There are ten cars, total.  
..... wa ..... ni narimasu
- ② That will be seven million yen.  
..... desu
- ③ It's easier to take the subway.  
..... kantan desu
- ④ I also want French perfume.  
..... mo .....

- ④ 今朝 家 を 出た 時、伯父 に  
 kesa ie o deta toki, oji ni  
 会いました。  
 aimashita.
- ⑤ そんなに 遠い の ですか。  
 sonna ni tooi no desu ka.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Did you see something? ② It would be better to leave early.  
 ③ Because I have a lot of children, I need a large car. ④ When I was  
 leaving the house this morning, I met my uncle. ⑤ Is it that far?

\*\*\*

- ⑤ I looked, but I didn't find anything.

.....  
 .....

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① kuruma - zenbu de jū dai -. ② nana hyaku man en -. ③ chikatetsu  
 de itta hō ga -. ④ furansu no kōsui - hoshii desu. ⑤ sagashimashita  
 ga nanimo mitsukarimasen deshita.

---

35 第三十五課

dai san jū go ka (dai san ju- go kah)

まとめ

matome

Revision and notes

You have gotten used to the rhythm, and you have been expecting this little break for the seventh lesson. It is true that they are essential in securing our notions and clarifying what we don't understand, so today we are going to take a panoramic look at what we have covered!

1. Let's begin with the particles, the bones of the Japanese sentence. You were warned (cf. Lesson 14, paragraph 3): に *ni* would not cease at finding new uses for itself. The first of these new uses we have already experienced a little bit: it allows us to create an adverbial expression (cf. Lesson 30, note 1). The second, completely new (lesson 32, item 12), shows that に *ni* indicates the agent of an action, which corresponds to the word *by* in English.

Let's take another look back at は *wa* (cf. Lesson 15, note 2). We've spoken of its use as an "emphasis" particle, especially after time adverbs. We will also find that this "emphasis" element holds true when は *wa* follows another particle (cf. Lesson 32, item 4):

高速道路 で は *kōsokudōro de wa*.

2. In our slew of question words (cf. Lesson 28, paragraph 2), we can now add なぜ *naze*, *why?* (Lesson 33, item 3).

3. Let's take a little tour through the **adjectives** we have studied (cf. Lesson 21, paragraph 2). They have a strange habit of changing form, just like verbs, but after all there are only a few of these forms and we have nearly seen all of them. So now we can seize the moment to look over what we've seen.

## Lesson Thirty-Five 35

|                                        |                     |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------|
| おいしい                                   | oishii              |
| <i>it's good</i> (low degree)          |                     |
| おいしいです                                 | oishii desu         |
| <i>it's good</i> (middle degree)       |                     |
| おいしかった                                 | oishikatta          |
| <i>it was good</i> (low degree)        |                     |
| おいしかったです                               | oishikatta desu     |
| <i>it was good</i> (middle degree)     |                     |
| おいしくない                                 | oishikunai          |
| or おいしくはない                             | oishiku wa nai      |
| <i>it's not good</i> (low degree)      |                     |
| おいしくありません                              | oishiku arimasen    |
| or おいしくありません                           | oishiku wa arimasen |
| <i>it is not good</i> (middle degree). |                     |

There is also another form where い *i* is replaced by く *ku* and that's it. This is normal form for certain verbs, particularly with なる *naru*, *become*:

cf. Lesson 26, item 5: 悪く なりました *waruku narimashita*, *became bad* (悪い *warui*, *be bad*);

cf. Lesson 33, item 4: 長く なります *nagaku narimasu*, *to become long* (長い *nagai*, *be long*).

We also find this form with つく *tsuku*, *reach*;

cf. Lesson 32, item 10: 高く つきます *takaku tsukimasu*, *that will become expensive* (高い *takai*, *be expensive*).

This form can also turn an adjective into an adverb: 早く *hayai*, *early* or *fast*, 早く *hayaku*, *early* or *quickly* (cf. Lesson 32, item 4).

Be careful, there is one adjective that might be a bit difficult! Of course, that is the one we use most often! The adjective いい *ii*, *be good*, has a double -よい *yoi* -that means exactly the same thing.

35 except that this twin is used for other forms:

いい

*it's good* (low degree)

いいです

*it's good* (middle degree)

**But:** よかった

*it was good* (low degree),

よかったです

*it was good* (middle degree)

**But:** よくない

*it was not good* (low degree)

よくありません

*it was not good* (middle degree).

And finally, よく なりました

*it became good.*

ii

ii desu

yokatta

yokatta desu

yokunai

yoku arimasen

yoku narimashita

4. Of course our little tour has to end with **verbs**. We will revisit them many times, but only because there's so much to see here! But look at the distance we've covered since Lesson 7, note 1, where we had already covered most of the forms a verb can take in middle degree. Right now we can set up a similar list for **low degree**:

*I [you, s/he . . .] eat[s]*

middle degree:

食べます

tabemasu

low degree:

食べる

taberu

*I [you, s/he...] do[es] not eat*

middle degree:

食べません

tabemasen

low degree:

食べない

tabenai

*I [you, s/he...] ate*

middle degree:

食べました

tabemashita

low degree:

食べた

tabeta

*Let's eat*

middle degree:

食べましょう

tabemashō

low degree:

食べよう

tabeyō

But don't forget about the other form we know, which implies that we are in the middle of doing something:

*I'm [you are, s/he is...] eating*

middle degree: 

|   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 食 | べ | て | い | ま | す |
| く | べ | て | い | ま | す |

**tabete imasu**

low degree: 

|   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 食 | べ | て | い | る |
| く | べ | て | い | る |

**tabete iru**

*I'm [you are, s/he is...] not eating*

middle degree: 

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 食 | べ | て | い | ま | せ | ん |
| く | べ | て | い | ま | せ | ん |

**tabete imasen**

low degree: 

|   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 食 | べ | て | い | な | い |
| く | べ | て | い | な | い |

**tabete inai**

*I was [you were, s/he was...] eating*

middle degree: 

|   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 食 | べ | て | い | ま | し | た |
| く | べ | て | い | ま | し | た |

**tabete imashita**

low degree: 

|   |   |   |   |   |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 食 | べ | て | い | た |
| く | べ | て | い | た |

**tabete ita**

–And that should set our table pretty well!

But don't forget (cf. Lesson 29, note 15), the low degree form that matches **ありません arimasen**, *not located* or *there isn't*, is **ない nai**.

**5.** Here are a few notes on some of the verbs we have come across:

–don't confuse **ある**, **あります aru / arimasu** and **いる**, **います iru / imasu**. The two both can mean *to be located*, and can also mean *there are*, but **ある aru** is used exclusively for things and objects, while **いる iru** can only be used to refer to animate object such as people or animals. We have seen **ある aru** almost perpetually in our lessons, but for **いる iru** see Lesson 15, item 4, and lesson 30, item 8.

–For **帰る kaeru** and **戻る modoru**, the two are both translated into English as *to return*, but **帰る kaeru** specifically means *to return home*, and can also include coming back to the home country, whereas **戻る modoru** means simply to return back where one was before (cf. lesson 31, items 12 and 13; lesson 33, item 10; lesson 32, item 13).

**6.** To wrap up our revision lesson, remember what we announced in our last review chapter: from now on we will keep only the “official transcription”. By now you are well used to it, and continuing to use the “figurative transcription” would risk overkill. Before we let go, though, here is a reminder for pronunciation:

36 the delicacy is in the transcription of ai and ei, which are sometimes pronounced "eye" and "eh", and sometimes "ah-ee" and "eh-ee", depending on the word. So for new words with these sounds, we will keep the figurative transcription. Same thing for u, which is

36 <sup>だい さん じゅう ろっ か</sup> 第三十六課 **dai san jū rok ka**

<sup>みょう じ</sup>  
苗字  
**myō ji**

1- <sup>に ほん じん</sup> 日本人 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>みょう じ</sup> 苗字 <sup>は</sup> は <sup>し ぜん</sup> 自然 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>もの</sup> 物  
ni hon jin no myō ji wa shizen no mono  
<sup>あらわ</sup> を <sup>な</sup> 表す <sup>な</sup> 名前 <sup>が</sup> が <sup>おほ</sup> 多い <sup>です</sup> ですね。  
o arawa su na mae ga oo i de su ne.

2- <sup>そう</sup> そう <sup>です</sup> ですね。 <sup>それ</sup> それに <sup>おな</sup> 同じ <sup>じ</sup> じ  
sō de su ne. so re ni ona ji  
<sup>みょう じ</sup> 苗字 <sup>を</sup> を <sup>も</sup> 持って <sup>い</sup> いる <sup>ひと</sup> 人  
myō ji o mo t te i ru hito

<sup>が</sup> が <sup>た</sup> たくさん <sup>い</sup> います。①  
ga ta ku sa n i ma su.

3 <sup>でん わ ちよう</sup> 電話帳 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>おな</sup> は <sup>おな</sup> 同じ <sup>みょう じ</sup> 苗字 <sup>が</sup> が  
den wa chō ni wa ona ji myō ji ga  
<sup>なん</sup> 何 <sup>ぺ</sup> ページ <sup>も</sup> も <sup>つづ</sup> 続く <sup>こ</sup> こと <sup>が</sup> が  
nan pē ji mo tsuzu ku ko to ga  
<sup>あ</sup> あります。  
a ri ma su.



either left unpronounced, as a tightened “oo”, or else almost left off entirely, particularly at the end of words.

At the beginning you might feel like something is missing, but you’ll get used to it quickly.

---

## Lesson Thirty-Six 36

### Family Names

*(family name)*

- 1 – Many Japanese family names represent things in nature.

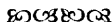
*(Japan-person / [relation] / family name / [announce] / nature / [relation] / thing / [object] / express / name / [subject] / be numerous / it is / [agreement])*

- 2 – Yes. Also, there are many people who have the same family name.

*(yes) (also / be same / family name / [object] / possess / person / [subject] / a lot / exist)*

- 3 In the telephone book the same family name will continue for pages and pages.

*(telephone book / [place] / [emphasis] / be same / family name / [subject] / don't know how many pages / continue / fact of / [subject] / exist)*



### Notes

- ① います *imasu*, cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 5.

- 4 たとえば、<sup>やまだ</sup>山田 <sup>たなか</sup>とか <sup>たなか</sup>田中 <sup>たなか</sup>とか  
 ta to e ba, yama da to ka ta naka to ka  
<sup>すずき</sup>鈴木 <sup>なまえ</sup>など <sup>なまえ</sup>という <sup>なまえ</sup>名前 <sup>なまえ</sup>です。②  
 suzu ki na do to i u na mae de su.
- 5- どうして <sup>おな</sup>そんな <sup>なまえ</sup>に <sup>なまえ</sup>同じ <sup>なまえ</sup>名前  
 dō shi te so n na ni ona ji na mae  
<sup>ひと</sup>の <sup>ひと</sup>人 <sup>ひと</sup>が <sup>ひと</sup>いる <sup>ひと</sup>の <sup>ひと</sup>です <sup>ひと</sup>か。  
 no hito ga i ru no de su ka.  
<sup>みんな</sup>皆 <sup>しんせき</sup>親戚 <sup>ひと</sup>の <sup>ひと</sup>人 <sup>ひと</sup>です <sup>ひと</sup>か。③  
 minna shinseki no hito de su ka.
- 6- <sup>かなう</sup>いいえ。 <sup>かなう</sup>必ずしも <sup>かなう</sup>そう <sup>かなう</sup>いう  
 i i e. kanara zu shi mo sō i u  
<sup>わか</sup>わけ <sup>わか</sup>で <sup>わか</sup>は <sup>わか</sup>あり <sup>わか</sup>ませ <sup>わか</sup>ん。  
 wa ke de wa a ri ma se n.
- 7 <sup>むかし</sup>昔 <sup>くげ</sup>は <sup>ぶけ</sup>公家 <sup>ぶけ</sup>と <sup>ぶけ</sup>武家 <sup>ひと</sup>の <sup>ひと</sup>人 <sup>ひと</sup>しか  
 mukashi wa ku ge to bu ke no hito shika  
<sup>みょうじ</sup>苗字 <sup>みょうじ</sup>が <sup>みょうじ</sup>あり <sup>みょうじ</sup>ませ <sup>みょうじ</sup>ん <sup>みょうじ</sup>で <sup>みょうじ</sup>し <sup>みょうじ</sup>た。④  
 myō ji ga a ri ma se n de shi ta.
- 8 <sup>だんだん</sup>段々 <sup>へいみん</sup>平民 <sup>みょうじ</sup>も <sup>みょうじ</sup>苗字 <sup>も</sup>を <sup>も</sup>持 <sup>も</sup>つ  
 dan dan hei min mo myō ji o motsu  
<sup>こと</sup>こ <sup>こと</sup>と <sup>こと</sup>に <sup>こと</sup>な <sup>こと</sup>り <sup>こと</sup>まし <sup>こと</sup>た。⑤  
 ko to ni na ri ma shi ta.
- 9 <sup>へいみん</sup>平民 <sup>いなか</sup>は <sup>いなか</sup>田舎 <sup>す</sup>に <sup>す</sup>住 <sup>す</sup>ん <sup>す</sup>で <sup>す</sup>い <sup>す</sup>る  
 hei min wa inaka ni su n de i ru  
<sup>ひと</sup>人 <sup>ひと</sup>が <sup>ひと</sup>ほ <sup>ひと</sup>と <sup>ひと</sup>ん <sup>ひと</sup>ど <sup>ひと</sup>で <sup>ひと</sup>し <sup>ひと</sup>た。  
 hito ga ho to n do de shi ta.

- 4 For example, the names Yamada, Tanaka, or Suzuki.  
*(for example / Yamada / or / Tanaka / or / Suzuki / this kind of thing / [quotation] / say / name / it is)*
- 5 – Why are there so many people with the same family name? Are they all related?  
*(why / this way / [adverb] / be same / name / [relation] / person / [subject] / exist / it's that / [question]) ( all / relatives / [relation] / person / it is / [question])*
- 6 – No, not necessarily.  
*(no) (necessarily / so / say / reason / it isn't)*
- 7 In the past only noble families and warrior families used family names.  
*(in the past / [emphasis] / court nobles / and / warriors / [relation] / person / other than / family name / [subject] / did not exist)*
- 8 Little by little the common people took family names as well.  
*(gradually / common people / also / family name / [object] / possess / fact of / [goal] / became)*
- 9 The majority of the common people were people living in the country.  
*(common people / [announce] / countryside / [place] / reside / person / [subject] / almost totally / it was)*

ノド

## Notes

- ② など **nado**. This little word comes either after a single noun, or else after a list, and is the equivalent of “everything that is like the thing or things I just said.” Here, など **nado** is preceded by some of the most widespread family names listed as examples of the different kinds of names. In lists, とか and など **nado** often go together. とか is usually used after everything in the list except that last item, where we would just separate them with commas, and is only used when the list ends with など.
- ③ のです **no desu**, cf. Lesson 30, note 2.
- ④ しか…ありません でした **shika arimasen deshita**, cf. Lesson 30, note 4.
- ⑤ 段々 **dandan** (cf. Lesson 10, note 3), the sign 々 signifies that the kanji (Chinese character) is repeated. This is the Japanese version of the ditto mark!

- 10 どう いう 苗字 を つけよう か と  
 dō i u myōji o tsuke yō ka to  
 思 っ た 時、自 然 に 関 係 が  
 omo t ta toki, shi zen ni kan kei ga  
 あ る 苗 字 を 作 り ま し た。㊦  
 a ru myōji o tsuku ri mashi ta.
- 11 た と え ば、山 に 田 を 持 っ て  
 ta to e ba, yama ni ta o mo t te  
 い た 人 は 「山 田」と い う  
 i ta hito wa yama da to i u  
 苗 字 に な り ま し た。  
 myōji ni na ri mashi ta.
- 12 「渡 辺」と い う 名 前 は 川  
 watanā be to i u na mae wa kawa  
 を 渡 る 所 に 住 ん で い た  
 o wata ru tokoro ni su n de i ta  
 人 に つ け た 名 前 で す。  
 hito ni tsuke ta na mae de su.
- 13 「山 中」と い う 名 前 は  
 yama naka to i u na mae wa  
 山 の 中 に 住 ん で い る  
 yama no naka ni su n de i ru  
 と い う 意 味 で す。  
 to i u i mi de su.

- 10 When it came time to make names for themselves, they often took them from nature.  
*(how / say / family name / [object] / let's attach / [question] / [quotation] / thought / time // nature / [goal] / connection / [subject] / exist / family name / [object] / made)*
- 11 For example, someone who had rice-fields in the mountains would take the name Yamada.  
*(for example / mountain / [place] / rice-field / [object] / had / person / [announce] / Yamada / [quotation] / say / family name / [goal] / became)*
- 12 Watanabe is a name given to someone who lived near a river-crossing.  
*(Watanabe / [quotation] / say / name / [announce] / river / [object] / cross / area / [place] / resided / person / [goal] / attached / name / it is)*
- 13 The name Yamanaka means "he who lives in the mountain".  
*(Yamanaka / [quotation] / say / name / [announce] / mountain / [relation] / inside / [place] / reside / [quotation] / say / meaning / it is)*



## Notes

- ⑥ We have practiced the verb 思<sup>おも</sup>う **omou**, *to think*, many times already. Here it is in the lower degree, past tense: 思<sup>おも</sup>った **omotta** *thought*. What was thought is found before the verb, linked to it with the particle と **to**, which is similar to how a comma or colon introduces quotation marks in English, except that it goes before the verb. The contents of the thought are expressed directly. Here, as the contents are a question, we find this question in its entirety before the と **to**, hence the か **ka**. Literally, it means: "[They] thought: 'What name shall we be given?'".

- 14 だから <sup>に ほんじん</sup>日本人 の <sup>みょうじ</sup>苗字 を  
 da ka ra nihonjin no myō ji o  
<sup>おぼ</sup>覚える こと は むずかしく  
 obo e ru ko to wa mu zu ka shiku  
 ありません。  
 a ri ma se n. □

\*\*\*

れん しゅう  
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

- ① スミス という <sup>な まえ</sup>名前は <sup>じん</sup>アメリカ人  
 sumisu to iu namae wa amerikajin  
 か <sup>じん</sup>イギリス人の <sup>な まえ</sup>名前 です。  
 ka igirisujin no namae desu.  
 ② <sup>に ほんじん</sup>日本人の <sup>みょうじ</sup>苗字は <sup>し ぜん</sup>自然の <sup>もの</sup>物を  
 nihonjin no myōji wa shizen no mono o  
<sup>あらわ</sup>表す <sup>な まえ</sup>名前が ほとんど です。  
 arawasu namae ga hotondo desu.  
 ③ <sup>おんな</sup>女の <sup>ひと</sup>人は <sup>みんな</sup>皆 <sup>こうすい</sup>香水が <sup>す</sup>好きです。  
 onno no hito wa minna kōsui ga suki desu.  
 ④ <sup>らいねん</sup>来年から <sup>とうきょう</sup>東京に <sup>す</sup>住む ことに  
 rainen kara tōkyō ni sumu koto ni  
 なります。  
 narimasu.

14 That's why Japanese family names are so easy to remember.

36

*(it is why / Japan-person / [relation] / family name / [object] / remember / fact of / [announce] / not be difficult)*

\*\*\*

- ⑤ <sup>わたなべ</sup>渡辺さんではないかと  
watanabe san de wa nai ka to  
<sup>おも</sup>思いました。  
omoimashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① Smith is an American or English family name. ② The majority of Japanese family names represent natural elements. ③ All women love perfume. ④ I have to live in Tōkyō beginning next year. ⑤ I wondered if it wasn't Mrs. Watanabe.



37 Exercise 2

... に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 を <sup>い</sup>入れ なさい

- ① All the objects that are here are ancient.  
koko ni aru mono . . . . .
- ② Sometimes I have to take the bus.  
tokidoki . . . . . noru . . . . .
- ③ We work in the same building.  
. . . . .
- ④ Around the station there are many businesses, such as book-stores and cafés.  
. . . . . atari . . . . . honya toka kissaten . . . . . ga  
. . . . .

37 <sup>だいさんじゅうななか</sup>第三十七課 dai san jū nana ka

ハチ公 ( <sup>つづ</sup>続き )  
ha chi kō (tsuzu ki)

1 - <sup>こう</sup>ハチ公 は <sup>あき た けん</sup>秋田犬 です から、  
ha chi kō wa aki ta ken de su ka ra,  
<sup>かぬし</sup>飼い主 に <sup>つか</sup>よく 仕えます。①②  
ka i nushi ni yo ku tsuka e ma su.

<sup>はつおん</sup>発音 hatsu. on (hahtsoo. on) - Pronunciation  
1. kainooshee ... tsookahémahs'



- ⑤ Only people in the family came.

shinseki no hito . . . . . ki . . . . .

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① – wa minna furui desu. ② – basu ni – koto ga arimasu. ③ onaji bīru de hataraitte imasu. ④ eki no – ni – nado – takusan arimasu. ⑤ – shika – masen deshita.

## Lesson Thirty-Seven 37

### Hachikō (Part Two)

(Hachikō / continue)

- 1 – As an Akita dog, Hachikō was very faithful to his master.

(Hachikō / [announce] / Akita-dog / it is / because // master / [attribution] / good / serve)

### Notes

- ① 秋田犬 **akita ken**, a breed of short-tailed Japanese dogs, very often specially trained. This breed, once close to extinction, is currently enjoying a vogue in Japan and America. The dogs originally come from the province of Akita, the west part of the north point of Honshū island, the largest in the Japanese archipelago.
- ② 飼い主 **kainushi**, *master*, but only in the sense of being the “master” of an animal.

- 2 でも その うちに <sup>うえの</sup>上野  
de mo so no u chi ni ue no  
さんは 亡<sup>な</sup>くなりました。  
sa n wa na ku na ri ma shi ta.
- 3 それでも ハチ公<sup>こう</sup> は 毎日<sup>まいにち</sup> <sup>うえの</sup>上野  
so re de mo ha chi kō wa mai nichi ue no  
さんを 迎<sup>むか</sup>え に 行<sup>い</sup>きました。  
sa n o muka e ni i ki ma shi ta.
- 4 毎日<sup>まいにち</sup> 何<sup>なん</sup> 時間<sup>じかん</sup> も 待<sup>ま</sup>ちました  
mai nichi nan ji kan mo machi mashi ta  
が、<sup>うえの</sup>上野 さんは 帰<sup>かえ</sup>って きません  
ga, ue no sa n wa kae t te ki ma se n  
でした。  
de shi ta.
- 5 何<sup>なん</sup> 年<sup>ねん</sup> 間<sup>かん</sup> も の 間<sup>あいだ</sup>、ハチ公<sup>こう</sup> は  
nan nen kan mo no aida, hachi kō wa  
毎日<sup>まいにち</sup> <sup>うえの</sup>上野 さん を 迎<sup>むか</sup>え  
mai nichi ue no sa n o muka e  
に 行<sup>い</sup>きました。  
ni i ki ma shi ta.
- 6 ある 日<sup>ひ</sup>、ハチ公<sup>こう</sup> も 死<sup>し</sup>にました。  
a ru hi, ha chi kō mo shi ni ma shi ta.

2. sono oochee ... nakonahreemahshtah 3. maineechee  
6. ahroohee yu-mé- ... neehonju-

- 2 But shortly after, Mr. Ueno passed away.  
*(but / soon / [adverbial] / Ueno-Mr. / [announce] / passed away)*
- 3 However, each day Hachikō would still go to greet Mr. Ueno.  
*(despite this / Hachikō / [announce] / every day / Ueno-Mr. / [object] / greet / [goal] / went)*
- 4 Every day he would wait for hours, but Mr. Ueno never came.  
*(every day / don't know how many hours / waited / but // Ueno-Mr. / [announce] / return / didn't come)*
- 5 Hachikō went every day to meet Mr. Ueno for years.  
*(don't know how many years / [relation] / time interval / Hachikō / [announce] / every day / Ueno-Mr. / [object] / greet / [goal] / went)*
- 6 Then one day, Hachikō died.  
*(certain / day / Hachikō / also / died)*

三〇三六



- 7 <sup>しぶ や</sup>渋谷 <sup>ひとびと</sup>の人々は <sup>こう</sup>ハチ公 <sup>に</sup>に  
 shibu ya no hitobito wa ha chi kō ni  
<sup>かんしん</sup>感心 <sup>した</sup>したので、<sup>えき</sup>駅 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>まえ</sup>前に  
 kan shin shi ta no de, eki no mae ni  
<sup>こう</sup>ハチ公 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>どうぞう</sup>銅像 <sup>を</sup>を <sup>た</sup>建てる  
 ha chi kō no dō zō o ta te ru

ことにしました。③

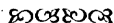
ko to ni shi ma shi ta.

- 8 <sup>いま</sup>今 <sup>で</sup>では <sup>こう</sup>ハチ公 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>どうぞう</sup>銅像 <sup>は</sup>は  
 ima de wa ha chi kō no dō zō wa  
<sup>ゆうめい</sup>有名 <sup>です</sup>です。日本中 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>ひと</sup>人が  
 yū mei de su. ni hon jū no hito ga  
<sup>みんな</sup>皆 <sup>その</sup>その <sup>はなし</sup>話を <sup>し</sup>知っています。  
 minna so no hanashi o shi t te i masu.

- 9 <sup>しぶ や えき</sup>渋谷駅 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>まえ</sup>前で <sup>ひと</sup>人と <sup>あ</sup>会う  
 shibu ya eki no mae de hito to a u  
<sup>やくそく</sup>約束 <sup>を</sup>を <sup>する</sup>する <sup>とき</sup>時、<sup>ひとびと</sup>人々は <sup>かなら</sup>必ず  
 yaku soku o su ru toki, hito bito wa kanarazu  
<sup>こう</sup>「ハチ公 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>どうぞう</sup>銅像 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>まえ</sup>前で  
 ha chi kō no dō zō no mae de  
<sup>あ</sup>会いましょう」と <sup>い</sup>言います。④  
 a i ma shō to i i ma su.

### 9. ahoo

- 7 Because the people of Shibuya admired Hachikō, they decided to erect a statue for him in front of the station.  
*(Shibuya / [relation] / people / [announce] / Hachikō / [attribution] / admiration-did / because // station / [relation] / front / [place] / Hachikō / [relation] / bronze statue / [object] / build / fact of / [goal] / did)*
- 8 Now the statue of Hachikō is famous. All people throughout Japan know the story.  
*(now / [time] / [emphasis] / Hachikō / [relation] / bronze statue / [announce] / famous / it is) (throughout Japan / [relation] / person / [subject] / all / this / story / [object] / know)*
- 9 When they make a date to meet in front of Shibuya station, people always say, "Let's meet in front of Hachikō's statue!"  
*(Shibuya-station / [relation] / front / [place] / person / [partnership] / meet / date / [object] / do / time // people / [announce] / without fail / Hachikō / [relation] / bronze statue / [relation] / in front / [place] / let's meet / [quotation] / say)*



## Notes

- ③ <sup>ひとびと</sup> 人々 **hitobito** (cf. Lesson 36, note 5): <sup>ひと</sup> 人 **hito** plus yet another <sup>ひと</sup> 人 **hito**. But the initial **h** becomes **b**, hence 人々 **hitobito**. The repetition is a simple way of expressing plurality. It is a method that is used only for certain words, in a very limited number.
- ④ cf. Lesson 36, note 6. With the verb 言う **iu**, *to say*, what precedes the particle と **to** is the quotation itself.

10 <sup>こんばん</sup> 今晚 <sup>しぶや</sup> 渋谷 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>あたり</sup> 辺り <sup>で</sup> で、 <sup>いっぱい</sup> 一杯  
 kon ban shibu ya no ata ri de, ip pai

いかが <sup>です</sup> ですか。⑤

i ka ga de su ka.

11 - <sup>じゃ</sup> じゃ、<sup>はちこう</sup> ハチ公 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>まえ</sup> 前 <sup>で</sup> で

<sup>あ</sup> 会い <sup>ましょ</sup> しょう。

a i ma shō.

□

10. ee'pai

\*\*\*

<sup>れんしゅう</sup> 練習 <sup>renshū</sup> renshū

### Exercise 1

① <sup>みつこし</sup> 三越 <sup>デパート</sup> デパート <sup>で</sup> で、<sup>はたら</sup> 働いて <sup>いた</sup> いた  
 mitsukoshi depāto de hataraita ita

<sup>とき</sup> 時、<sup>しぶや</sup> 渋谷 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>す</sup> 住んで <sup>いま</sup> いました。

toki, shibuya ni sunde imashita.

② <sup>たなか</sup> 田中 <sup>さん</sup> さんを <sup>むか</sup> 迎え <sup>に</sup> に <sup>い</sup> 行く

tanaka san o mukae ni iku

こと <sup>に</sup> に <sup>しま</sup> しました。

koto ni shimashita.

③ <sup>おじ</sup> 伯父 <sup>は</sup> は <sup>ろく</sup> 六 <sup>ねん</sup> 年 <sup>かん</sup> 間 <sup>ぐらい</sup> ぐらい

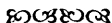
oji wa roku nen kan gurai

10 What would you say to a drink tonight around Shibuya?

(tonight / Shibuya / [relation] / around / [place] / one-glass / how / it is / [question])

11 – So, let's meet in front of Hachikō!

(so / Hachikō / [relation] / front / [place] / let's meet)



## Notes

- ㊦ 杯 <sup>はい</sup>hai (cf. Lesson 22, note 3). This word is used when counting (full) cups or glasses. 一杯 <sup>いっぱい</sup>ippai, literally, “one glass”, can also mean *a drink*.

\*\*\*

ちゅうごく

中国 に いました。

chūgoku ni imashita.

- ㊦ 兄 <sup>あに</sup>は 車 <sup>くるま</sup>を 二 <sup>に</sup>台 <sup>だい</sup>持 <sup>も</sup>っ <sup>て</sup>い <sup>ま</sup>す。

ani wa kuruma o ni dai motte imasu.

- ㊦ 朝 <sup>あさ</sup>早 <sup>はや</sup>く 人 <sup>ひと</sup>と 会 <sup>あ</sup>う 時 <sup>とき</sup>、「おはよう

asa hayaku hito to au toki, “o hayō

gozaimasu” と <sup>い</sup>い <sup>ま</sup>す。

gozaimasu” to iimasu.

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① When I worked at the Mitsukoshi department store, I lived in Shibuya. ② I decided to go meet Mr. Tanaka. ③ My uncle stayed in China for about six years. ④ My older brother has two cars. ⑤ When we meet someone in the morning, we say “o hayō gozaimasu [hello]”.

38 Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 を <sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① I get up every day at eight thirty.  
.....
- ② Do you know the story of Hachikō?  
hachikō .. .. .
- ③ Suzuki's car is also red.  
..... kuruma .. .. .
- ④ I worked in that airport for ten years.  
kono hikōjō de .. .. . hataraitte imashita

38 <sup>だいさんじゅうはつか</sup>第三十八課 dai san jū hak ka

<sup>しよるい</sup>書類  
sho rui

1 - この <sup>しよるい</sup>書類 は わからない  
 ko no sho rui wa wa ka ra na i .  
 ところ が たくさん あります  
 to ko ro ga ta ku sa n a ri ma su  
 から、<sup>せつめい</sup>説明 <sup>くだ</sup>して 下さい。  
 ka ra, setsu mei shi te kuda sa i .

<sup>はつおん</sup>発音 **hatsu. on** (*hahtsoo. on*) – Pronunciation  
 1. shorooee ... wahkahranai ... sétsoomé-



⑤ All the trucks in my company are blue.

..... kaisha .. ..... wa .....  
 .....

## Answers to Exercise 2

① mainichi hachi ji han ni okimasu. ② - no hanashi o shitte imasu ka. ③ suzuki san no - mo akai desu. ④ - jū nen kan -. ⑤ watakushi no - no torakku - minna aoi desu.

## Lesson Thirty-Eight 38

### The Form

(form)

- 1 - There are a lot of things I don't understand on this form, can you explain it to me?  
 (this / form / [announce] / not be understandable / area / [subject] / a lot / exist / because // explain-do please)

職業とはどういう意味ですか。



38

- 2 <sup>な まえ</sup>名前 と <sup>みとうじ</sup>苗字 の <sup>い み</sup>意味 は  
 na mae to myōji no i mi wa  
 わかります が、<sup>こくせき</sup>国籍 と は  
 wa ka ri ma su ga, koku seki to wa  
<sup>なん</sup>何 です か。  
 nan de su ka.
- 3— <sup>こくせき</sup>国籍 と いう の は あなた  
 koku seki to i u no wa a na ta  
 は どこの <sup>くに</sup>国 の <sup>ひと</sup>人 です  
 wa do ko no kuni no hito de su  
 か と いう こと です。①②  
 ka to i u ko to de su.
- 4 <sup>かなら</sup>必ずしも <sup>う</sup>生まれた <sup>くに</sup>国 で  
 kanara zushi mo u ma re ta kuni de  
 は ありません。  
 wa a ri ma se n.
- 5 たとえば <sup>ゆ み</sup>由美 さん は  
 ta to e ba yu mi sa n wa  
 オーストラリア で <sup>う</sup>生まれました  
 ō su to ra ri a de u ma re ma shi ta  
 が、<sup>こくせき</sup>国籍 は <sup>にほん</sup>「日本」 です。  
 ga, koku seki wa ni hon de su.
- 6 あなた の <sup>こくせき</sup>国籍 は 「スペイン」  
 a na ta no koku seki wa su pe i n  
 です。  
 de su.

- 2 I understand the meaning of “*namae* (given name)” and of “*myōji* (family name)”, but what is “*kokuseki* (nationality)”?  
*(given name / and / family name / [relation] / meaning / [announce] / be understandable / but // nationality / [quotation] / [announce] / what / it is / [question])*
- 3 – With “*kokuseki* (nationality)”, that means the country you’re from.  
*(nationality / [quotation] / say / [replacement] / [announce] / you / [announce] / where / [relation] / country / [relation] / person / it is / [question] / [quotation] / say / fact of / it is)*
- 4 It’s not necessarily the country where you were born.  
*(necessarily / be born / country / it is not)*
- 5 For example, Yumi was born in Australia, but her nationality is “Japanese”.  
*(for example / Yumi-Miss / [announce] / Australia / [place] / be born / but // nationality / [announce] / Japan / it is)*
- 6 Your nationality, that would be “Spanish”.  
*(you / [relation] / nationality / [announce] / Spain / it is)*

おさらい

2. *kokoosékee* 3. *koonee* 4. *oomahrétah* 5. *yumee* ... *osootorahreeah*

## Notes

- ① 国籍 という の は *kokuseki to iu no wa*. This の **no** that we have here is another の **no**. Up till now we have learned the の **no** of relation, which comes between two nouns. This here in item 3 is placed between a verb and a particle. It is used to replace either a noun already spoken early, or else a noun that is made obvious from the context. Here, the antecedent noun is 言葉 *kotoba*, word (cf. the title of Exercise 2 in each lesson). Literally, “that (the word) which says ‘*kokuseki*’”. In the word-for-word translation, we express the function of this の **no** with a “[replacement]”.
- ② cf. Lesson 37, note 4. Literally, “That’s a thing that says: from which country are you?”

- 7- 住所<sup>じゅうしょ</sup> は わかります。住<sup>す</sup>んで  
jū sho wa wa ka ri masu. su n de  
いる<sup>ここに</sup> 所<sup>ところ</sup> です ね。  
i ru tokoro de su ne.
- 8 職業<sup>しよくぎょう</sup> と は どう いう  
shoku gyō to wa dō i u  
意味<sup>いみ</sup> です か。  
i mi de su ka.
- 9- あなた が して いる 仕事<sup>しごと</sup>  
a na ta ga shi te i ru shi goto  
の こと です。  
no ko to de su.
- 10 この 書類<sup>しよるい</sup> は 何<sup>なん</sup> の ため  
ko no shorui wa nan no ta me  
の 物<sup>もの</sup> です か。  
no mono de su ka.
- 11 滞在<sup>たいざい</sup> 許可証<sup>きよかしょう</sup> の ため です か。  
tai zai kyo ka shō no ta me de su ka.
- 12 大学<sup>だいがく</sup> に 入学<sup>にゅうがく</sup> する ため  
dai gaku ni nyū gaku su ru ta me  
です か。  
de su ka.
- 13- いいえ。テニス・クラブ に  
i i e. te ni su ku ra bu ni  
入<sup>はい</sup>る ため です。  
hai ru ta me de su.

□

- 7 – “jūsho (address)” I understand. That’s the place where you live!  
*(address / [announce] / be understandable) (live in / place / it is / [agreement])*
- 8 What does “shokugyō (profession)” mean?  
*(profession / [quotation] / [announce] / how / say / meaning / it is / [question])*
- 9 – That’s the work that you do.  
*(you / [subject] / be doing / work / [relation] / thing / it is)*
- 10 What’s this form for?  
*(this / form / [announce] / what / [relation] / goal / [relation] / thing / it is / [question])*
- 11 Is it for your residence license?  
*(residence-license / [relation] / goal / it is / [question])*
- 12 Is it to enter a university?  
*(university / [goal] / enter university-do / goal / it is / [question])*
- 13 – No. It’s to enter a tennis club.  
*(no) (tennis-club / [goal] / enter / intention / it is)*



## Exercise 1

- ① 意味 が わからない 言葉 が  
imi ga wakaranai kotoba ga

たくさん あります。

takusan arimasu.

- ② 住所 とは 住んでいる ところ です。  
jūsho to wa sunde iru tokoro desu.

- ③ 書類 とは どういう 意味 ですか。  
shorui to wa dō iu imi desu ka.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

... に 言葉 を 入れ なさい

- ① What does “kippu (ticket)” mean?  
kippu . . . dō . . . . .
- ② That’s for my trip next week.  
.....
- ③ I understand “kuni (country)”, but I don’t understand “kokuseki (nationality)”.  
kuni . . . . . kokuseki . .  
.....
- ④ What country does he come from?  
.....

- ④ <sup>しごと</sup>仕事 の ため です。  
shigoto no tame desu.
- ⑤ この <sup>みち</sup>道 は <sup>いぬ</sup>犬 を <sup>さんぽ</sup>散歩 させる  
kono michi wa inu o sanpo saseru  
ため の <sup>みち</sup>道 です。  
tame no michi desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① There are many words that I do not understand. ② Address, that's the place where you live. ③ What does "shorui" mean? ④ That's for my work. ⑤ This road is made for walking dogs.

\*\*\*

- ⑤ I was born in China, but I am Japanese.  
watakushi wa .....  
.....

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① – to wa – iu imi desu ka. ② raishū no ryokō no tame desu. ③ – wa wakarimasu ga – wa wakarimasen. ④ doko no kuni no hito desu ka. ⑤ – chūgoku de umaremashita ga kokuseki wa nihon desu.

39 第三十九課 dai san jū kyū ka

両親 への 手紙  
ryō shin e no tegami

- 1 おとといの 木曜日 は お祖父さん  
o to to i no mokuyōbi wa o jii sa n  
とお祖母さんと 上野の 動物園  
to o baa sa n to ue no no dōbutsu en  
へ 行って きました。⑩⑪  
e i t te ki mashi ta.
- 2 私達 は 初めて 動物園 へ  
watashi tachi wa haji me te dō butsu en e  
行った ので、大喜び でした。  
i t ta no de, oo yoroko bi de shi ta.
- 3 一 時間 以上 並びました。  
ichi jikan i jō nara bi ma shi ta.
- 4 「どうして こんな に 皆 並ぶ  
dō shi te ko n na ni minna narabu  
の ですか」と お祖父さん  
no de su ka to o jii sa n  
に 聞きました。  
ni ki ki mashi ta.



## Letter to the Parents

*(mother and father / [destination] / [relation] / letter)*

- 1 The day before yesterday, Thursday, we went to the Ueno zoo with Grandpa and Grandma.  
*(day before yesterday / [apposition] / Thursday / [emphasis] / grandpa / and / grandma / [partnership] / Ueno / [relation] / zoo / [destination] / go / came)*
- 2 Because it was the first time for us to go to the zoo, we were very happy.  
*(we / [announce] / for the first time / zoo / [destination] / went / because // big joy / it was)*
- 3 We waited in line for over an hour  
*(one-hour-over / wait in line)*
- 4 I asked Grandpa, "Why are there so many people waiting in line?"  
*(why / this way / [adverbial] / all / wait in line / it's that / [question] / [quotation] / grandpa / [attribution] / asked)*

ハツオン

はつ おん  
発音

**hatsu. on** (*hahtsoo. on*) – Pronunciation

1. ototoee ... mokooyo-bee ... do-bootsooen

### Notes

- ① This passage is in the voice of a child. We have seen that when speaking of members of your own family, an adult will never follow a familial term with **さん san** (cf. Lesson 26, note 2), though it is used for familial terms when speaking of the families of others (cf. Lesson 15, notes 1 and 3; Lesson 23, note 1). But part of the language of children is to use **さん san** after the terms for members of their own families.
- ② <sup>うえの</sup>上野 *Ueno*, area in the north section of Tōkyō. In addition to a zoo, Japan's largest national art museum is also in this part of town.

- 5 「春<sup>はる</sup>は子供<sup>こども</sup>が生まれる<sup>う</sup>季節<sup>きせつ</sup>  
 haru wa ko domo ga u mare ru ki setsu  
 なので、皆<sup>みんな</sup>見<sup>み</sup>にくるのです」  
 na no de, minna mi ni ku ru no de su  
 とお祖父<sup>じい</sup>さんが答<sup>こた</sup>えました。③  
 to o jii sa n ga kota e ma shi ta.
- 6 先<sup>ま</sup>ず首<sup>くび</sup>が長<sup>なが</sup>いきりんを  
 ma zu kubi ga naga i ki ri n o  
 見<sup>み</sup>ました。それからしわだらけ  
 mi ma shi ta. so re kara shi wa da ra ke  
 の三<sup>さん</sup>頭<sup>とう</sup>の象<sup>ぞう</sup>を見<sup>み</sup>ました。④  
 no san tō no zō o mi mashita.
- 7 一<sup>いっ</sup>頭<sup>とう</sup>は耳<sup>みみ</sup>が小<sup>ちひ</sup>さいアフリカ  
 it tō wa mimi ga chii sa i a fu ri ka  
 象<sup>ぞう</sup>でした。もう二<sup>に</sup>頭<sup>とう</sup>は耳<sup>みみ</sup>  
 zō de shi ta. mō ni tō wa mimi  
 が大<sup>おほ</sup>きいインド象<sup>ぞう</sup>でした。  
 ga oo ki i i n do zō de shi ta.
- 8 愛<sup>あい</sup>嬌<sup>きょう</sup>がよい熊<sup>くま</sup>はピーナツ  
 ai kyō ga i i kuma wa pī na t tsu  
 をむしゃむしゃ食<sup>た</sup>べていました。⑤  
 o mu sha mu sha ta be te i ma shi ta.

5. keesetsoo 6. nagai 8. aikyoo

- 5 “Because Spring is the season where little ones are born, everyone is coming to see,” Grandpa replied.

*(Spring / [announce] / child / [subject] / born / season / it is / because // all / watch / [goal] / come / it's that / [quotation] / grandpa / [subject] / responded)*

- 6 First we saw a giraffe with its long neck. Then we saw three wrinkly elephants.

*(first / neck / [subject] / be long / giraffe / [object] / watched) (following / wrinkle-covered / [relation] / three-big animal / [relation] / elephant / [object] / watched)*

- 7 One was an **African** elephant with small ears. The other two were **Indian** elephants with large ears.

*(one-big animal / [announce] / ear / [subject] / be small / Africa-elephant / it was) (more / two-big animal / [announce] / ear / [subject] / be big / India-elephant / it was)*

- 8 A funny bear was eating peanuts with fervor.

*(charms / [subject] / be good / bear / [announce] / peanuts / [object] / yummy / was eating)*

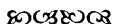


## Notes

- ③ な ので **na node**, cf. Lesson 33, note 1.
- ④ 頭 <sup>とう</sup> **tō**, used whenever counting large animals. Literally, it means “head”.
- ⑤ むしやむしや **musha musha**, one of the many words of Japanese, which while both numerous and amusing, are nearly always untranslatable. They represent noises, impressions of gestures, of light, etc. Here, it is the way of chewing. Not quite onomatopoeia, they are sonic depictions of the character of the action itself.

- 9 <sup>かわ さき</sup>川崎 <sup>せん せい</sup>先生 <sup>に</sup>によく <sup>に</sup>似た  
 kawa saki sen sei ni yo ku ni ta  
<sup>さる</sup>猿 <sup>が</sup> <sup>き</sup>木 <sup>の</sup> <sup>えだ</sup>枝 <sup>から</sup> <sup>えだ</sup>枝 <sup>へ</sup>  
 saru ga ki no eda ka ra eda e  
<sup>と</sup>飛び <sup>うつ</sup>移って <sup>い</sup>ました。  
 to bi utsu t te i ma shita.
- 10 <sup>ねむ</sup>眠 <sup>な</sup> <sup>め</sup>目を <sup>し</sup>た <sup>ら</sup>く <sup>だ</sup>  
 nemu sō na me o shi ta ra ku da  
<sup>あ</sup>が <sup>ゆ</sup>っくり <sup>あ</sup>歩いて <sup>い</sup>ました。⑥  
 ga yu k ku ri aru i te i ma shita.
- 11 ライオン <sup>が</sup> <sup>おり</sup>檻 <sup>の</sup> <sup>なか</sup>中 <sup>で</sup> <sup>ほ</sup>吠えた  
 ra i o n ga ori no naka de ho e ta  
<sup>とき</sup>時 <sup>に</sup> <sup>は</sup> <sup>いもうと</sup>妹 <sup>の</sup> <sup>か</sup>おる  
 toki ni wa, imōto no ka o ru  
<sup>おどろ</sup>ちゃん <sup>が</sup> <sup>おどろ</sup>驚いて <sup>な</sup>泣きました。  
 cha n ga odoro i te na ki mashita.  
<sup>き</sup>きっと <sup>こ</sup>わかった <sup>の</sup> <sup>で</sup>しょう。⑦  
 ki t to kowaka t ta no de shō.
- 12 パンダ <sup>の</sup> <sup>おり</sup>檻 <sup>の</sup> <sup>まえ</sup>前は <sup>た</sup>く <sup>さん</sup>  
 pa n da no ori no mae wa ta ku sa n  
<sup>ひと</sup>の <sup>が</sup> <sup>なら</sup>並んで <sup>いた</sup> <sup>の</sup> <sup>み</sup>で <sup>見る</sup>  
 no hito ga nara n de i ta no de mi ru  
<sup>こ</sup>こと <sup>が</sup> <sup>で</sup>き <sup>ませ</sup>ん <sup>で</sup> <sup>し</sup>た。  
 ko to ga de ki mase n de shi ta.

- 9 A monkey that looked a lot like my teacher, Mr. Kawasaki, was leaping from branch to branch.  
*(Kawasaki-teacher / [attribution] / quite / resemble / monkey / [subject] / tree / [relation] / branch / from / branch / [destination] / was jumping side to side)*
- 10 A camel with sleepy eyes was walking slowly.  
*(appear asleep / it is / eye / [object] / did / camel / [subject] / slowly / was walking)*
- 11 When the lion roared in his cage, my little sister Kaoru was so surprised she started to cry. She sure was scared.  
*(lion / [subject] / cage / [relation] / inside / [place] / roared / time / [time] / [emphasis] // little sister / [apposition] / Kaoru / [subject] / surprised / cried) (certainly / ceased with fear / I believe it is)*
- 12 Because there was a long line in front of the panda cage, we couldn't see it.  
*(panda / [relation] / cage / [relation] / before / [announce] / many / [relation] / person / [subject] / was waiting in line / because // watch / fact of / [subject] / was not possible)*



9. tobееootsoo'té 10. némooso- ... yoo'kooree 11. odoroeeté

## Notes

- ⑥ 眠そう *nemusō*, cf. Lesson 25, note 1.
- ⑦ かおる ちゃん *kaoru chan*. ちゃん *chan*, a derivation of さん *san*, is often used with the name of a small child, especially the name of a little girl.

- 13 その 代わり、お祖父さんが  
 so no ka wa ri, o jii sa n ga  
 パンダの 絵葉書を一枚  
 pa n da no e ha gaki o ichi mai  
 ずつ買って くれました。  
 zu tsu ka t te ku re ma shi ta.
- 14 とても 楽しい一日 でした。  
 to te mo tano shi i ichi nichi deshi ta. □

\*\*\*

れん しゅう  
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

- ① 先週 の 木曜日 初めて インド  
 senshū no mokuyōbi hajimete indo  
 料理 を 食べました。  
 ryōri o tabemashita.
- ② 東京 から 静岡 まで は 百  
 tōkyō kara shizuoka made wa hyaku  
 五十 キロ 以上 あります。  
 go juk kiro ijō arimasu.
- ③ 「なぜ 泣くの」と 妹 に  
 naze naku no to imōto ni

13 Instead, Grandpa bought us each a postcard of a panda. 39

(of this / replace / grandpa / [subject] / panda / [relation] / postcard / [object] / one-sheet / each / buy / did for us)

14 This was a marvelous day.  
(very / be joyous / day / it was)

\*\*\*

とても 楽しい 一日 でした。



キ  
聞きました。

kikimashita.

① 飼<sup>か</sup>い主<sup>ぬし</sup> に 似<sup>に</sup>た 犬<sup>いぬ</sup> です。

kainushi ni nita inu desu.

⑤ 向<sup>む</sup>こう の 店<sup>みせ</sup> に おいしそうな

mukō no mise ni oishisō na

お菓子<sup>かし</sup> が あります。

o kashi ga arimasu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I ate Indian cuisine for the first time last Thursday. ② It is more than 150 kilometers from Tōkyō to Shizuoka. ③ I asked my little sister why she was crying. ④ It's a dog that resembles its master. ⑤ In the store opposite there are cakes that seem delicious.

40 Exercise 2

...に <sup>こと ば</sup>言葉 を <sup>い</sup>入れ なさい

- ① I went to do the shopping with Yumi and Kaoru.  
 ..... kaimono ni  
 .....
- ② Because it was Sunday the bank was closed.  
 ..... datta node, ..... yasumi  
 .....
- ③ My son replied to me that he had seen giraffes, elephants, and lions.  
 .....  
 .....

40 <sup>だい よんじゅう つか</sup>第四十課 dai yon juk ka

<sup>こう じょう</sup>工場 <sup>けん がく</sup>見学  
 kō jō ken gaku

- 1- ようこそ いらっしやいました。①  
 yō ko so i ra s sha i mashita.
- 2 これから <sup>わたくしども</sup>私共 <sup>こうじょう</sup>の 工場  
 ko re ka ra watakushi domo no kō jō  
 を <sup>あんない</sup>ご案内 しまししょう。②③  
 o go an nai shi ma shō.

Notes

- ① The way to say *welcome* in Japanese is just like the construction of the English word, which is literally “very well / to have come”. ▶



④ We waited in front of the bear cage.  
 . . . . .

⑤ Give me tangerines and apples, two of each, please.  
 . . . . . futatsu . . . . .

## Answers to Exercise 2

① yumi san to kaoru san to – ikimashita. ② nichiyōbi – ginkō wa – deshita. ③ kirin to zō to raion o mimashita to musuko ga kotae-mashita. ④ kuma no ori no mae de machimashita. ⑤ mikan to ringo o – zutsu kudasai.

## Lesson Forty 40

### Visit to the Factory

(factory-visit)

1 – Welcome!

2 We shall now begin the visit to our factory.  
 (from now / we / [relation] / factory / [object] / [polite]-  
 guide-let's do)

はつ おん

発音 **hatsu. on** (hahtsoo. on) – Pronunciation

1. eerahshshaeemahshtah 2. annai

- ▶ ② 私共 <sup>わたくしども</sup> watakushidomo, *we / us*, used exclusively for an official “we”. Here, the “we” represents a company.
- ③ ご案内 <sup>ご案内</sup> go annai. 案内 <sup>案内</sup> annai on its own indicates the act of guiding someone. With an added ご go it places the noun in high degree. This is also the use of お o, cf. Lesson 34, item 9.

- 3 ここでは電気製品を  
 ko ko de wa den ki sei hin o  
 おも 主に 作っ て います。  
 omo ni tsuku t te i masu.
- 4 どうぞ、こちらへ。足元に  
 dō zo, ko chi ra e. ashi moto ni  
 き 気 を つけて 下さい。  
 ki o tsu ke te kuda sa i.
- 5 ここはできあがった電気製品  
 ko ko wa de ki a ga t ta den ki sei hin  
 の 倉庫 です。できた年代ごと  
 no sō ko de su. de ki ta nendai go to  
 に 置いて あります。  
 ni o i te a ri ma su.
- 6 右の建物は事務所です。左  
 mi gi no ta te mono wa ji mu sho de su. hi da ri  
 の 建物は 製造 工場 です。  
 no ta te mono wa sei zō kō jō de su.
- 7- すみませんが、ちょっと質問  
 su mi ma se n ga, cho t to shitsu mon  
 が ある の です けれども…。  
 ga a ru no de su ke re do mo.
- 8- どうぞ。何ですか。  
 dō zo. nan de su ka.

- 3 Here we mainly make electronics equipment.  
*(here / [place] / [emphasis] / electric-manufacture goods / [object] / main / [adverbial] / be making)*
- 4 This way, please. Watch your step.  
*(please / this side / [destination]) (step / [goal] / your attention / [object] / attach)*
- 5 Here is the warehouse for our completed products. They are classified based on the chronological order of when they were made.  
*(here / [announce] / be finished / electric-manufacture goods / [relation] / warehouse / it is) (be finished / chronological order / [adverbial] / be placed)*
- 6 In the building on the right, there are offices. Those on the left are buildings for manufacturing.  
*(right / [relation] / building / [announce] / office / it is) (left / [relation] / building / [announce] / manufacturing-factory / it is)*
- 7 - Excuse me, but I would like to ask a question.  
*(excuse me / but // a little / question / [subject] / exist / it's that / even though...)*
- 8 - Go ahead. What would you like to know?  
*(go ahead) (what / it is / [question])*

練習問題

3. sé-heen 5. nendai 6. sé-zo- 7. sheetsoomon



- 9 - 工員こういん が 全然ぜんぜん 見えませんみ が、  
 kō in ga zenzen mi e ma se n ga,  
 どこどこ に いるい の ですか。か。  
 do ko ni i ru no de su ka.
- 10 - 前まえ は 工員こういん が して いた  
 mae wa kō in ga shi te i ta  
 仕事しごと を 今いま は ロボット が  
 shi goto o ima wa ro bo t to ga  
 全部ぜんぶ して います。  
 zen bu shi te i ma su.
- 11 コンピュータ が ロボット を  
 ko n pyū ta ga ro bo t to o  
 動かうご して います。  
 ugoka shi te i masu.
- 12 - 失業しつぎょう 者しゃ は 出で な かつ た の  
 shitsu gyō sha wa de naka t ta no  
 ですか。④  
 de su ka.
- 13 - 工員こういん は 私達わたくしたち が 持も っ て  
 kō in wa watakushi tachi ga mo t te  
 いる ロボット を 作つく る 工場こうじょう と  
 i ru ro bo t to o tsuku ru kō jō to  
 コンピュータ を 組く み 立た て る  
 ko n pyū ta o ku mi ta te ru  
 工場こうじょう で 働はたら いて います。  
 kō jō de hatara i te i ma su. □

- 9 – I don't see any workers. Where are they?  
*(worker / [subject] / not at all / not be visible / but // where / [place] / exist / it's that / [question])*
- 10 – What was done in the past by workers is now entirely done by robots.  
*(before / [emphasis] / worker / [subject] / was doing / work / [object] / now / [emphasis] / robot / [subject] / entirely / be doing)*
- 11 And the computers command the robots.  
*(computer / [subject] / robot / [object] / make move)*
- 12 – Isn't there unemployment?  
*(unemployed / [announce] / not appeared / it's that / [question])*
- 13 – The workers work in a factory that make robots and in a factory that make computers, factories that belong to us.  
*(worker / [announce] / we / [subject] / possess / robot / [object] / make / factory / and / computer / [object] / assemble / factory / [place] / be working)*



11. konpyu-tah ... oogokahsheeté 13. koomeetahtéeroo

## Notes

- ④ 出なかつた *denakatta*, low degree form of 出ません *demasen deshita*, *not to appear (or come out)*.

## Exercise 1

- ① すみません、郵便局 は どこ に  
sumimasen, yūbinkyoku wa doko ni  
あります か。  
arimasu ka.
- ② この 駅 から は 主 に 西 の 方  
kono eki kara wa omo ni nishi no hō  
へ 行く 汽車 が 出発 します。  
e iku kisha ga shuppatsu shimasu.
- ③ 私 共 は 自動車 を 組み立てる  
watakushidomo wa jidōsha o kumitateru  
工場 と 電話 を 作る 工場 を  
kōjō to denwa o tsukuru kōjō o  
も 持っ て います。  
motte imasu.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

... に 言葉 を 入れ なさい

- ① Watch out for cars.  
jidōsha . . . . .
- ② The company where I worked made electronics equipment.  
watashi ga . . . . . wa . . . . .  
. . . . .

- ④ <sup>みんな</sup>皆 <sup>にゆういん</sup>入院 した ので、<sup>いえ</sup>家 に  
minna nyū.in shita node, ie ni

だれも いません。  
daremo imasen.

- ⑤ <sup>かばん</sup>鞆 を <sup>つく</sup>作る ロボット を <sup>うご</sup>動かす  
kaban o tsukuru robotto o ugokasu

コンピュータ を <sup>つく</sup>作る <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場 です。  
konpyūta o tsukuru kōjō desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Excuse me, where is the post office? ② From this station leave primarily trains going west. ③ Our company owns a factory for constructing automobiles and a factory for constructing telephones. ④ Because they are all in the hospital, there is no one at home. ⑤ This is a factory that makes computers that control robots that make bags.

\*\*\*

- ③ The robots do all the work but there is no unemployment.

.....  
..... demasen .....

- ④ I don't understand at all.

.....

- ⑤ Right now we are constructing buildings.

..... tate .....

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① – ni ki o tsukete kudasai. ② – hataraitte ita kaisha – denki seihin o tsukutte imashita. ③ robotto ga shigoto o zenbu shite imasu ga shitsugyōsha wa – deshita. ④ zenzen wakarimasen. ⑤ ima jimusho o – te imasu.

41 <sup>だい よんじゅういつ か</sup> 第四十一課 dai yon jū ik ka

<sup>か</sup> 変わった <sup>ひと</sup> 人  
ka wa t ta hito

- 1- <sup>わたし</sup> 私 <sup>ともだち</sup> の 友達 <sup>の</sup> の マノリータ  
watashi no tomo dachi no ma no rī ta  
<sup>あ</sup> に 会った <sup>こと</sup> ことが <sup>あ</sup> あります <sup>か</sup> か。  
ni a t ta ko to ga a ri ma su ka.
- 2- <sup>あ</sup> 会った <sup>こと</sup> ことが <sup>あ</sup> ありません。  
a t ta ko to ga a ri ma se n
- 3- とても おもしろい <sup>アルゼンチン人</sup> アルゼンチン人  
to te mo o moshi ro i a ru ze n chi n jin  
です。①  
de su.
- 4- <sup>しよくきよう</sup> 職業 <sup>は</sup> は？  
shoku gyō wa ?
- 5- <sup>さつぎよくか</sup> 作曲家 <sup>です</sup> です。  
sak kyoku ka de su.
- 6- <sup>おんな</sup> 女 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>さつぎよくか</sup> 作曲家 <sup>です</sup> です <sup>か</sup> か。  
onna no sak kyoku ka de su ka.
- めずらしい <sup>です</sup> です <sup>ね</sup> ね。  
me zu ra shi i de su ne.



---

## Lesson Forty-One 41

### Someone Eccentric

*(changed / person)*

- 1 – Did you meet my friend Manolita?  
*(me / [relation] / friend / [apposition] / Manolita / [goal] /  
met / fact of / [subject] / exist / [question])*
- 2 – No.  
*(met / fact of / [subject] / not exist)*
- 3 – She's a very interesting person from Argentina.  
*(very / be amusing / Argentine-person / it is)*
- 4 – What does she do?  
*(profession / [announce])*
- 5 – She's a composer.  
*(composer / it is)*
- 6 – A female composer? That's rare!  
*(woman / [apposition] / composer / it is / [question]) (be  
rare / it is / agreement)*

メゾソール

はつ おん

発音

**hatsu. on (hahtsoo. on) – Pronunciation**

6. mézoorahshee-

### Notes

- ① アルゼンチン人 <sup>じん</sup> aruzenchinjin, cf. Lesson 28, paragraph 1.

- 41 7- そう ですね。でも マノリータ  
 sō de su ne. demo ma no rī ta  
 は 変わった 人 です。  
 wa ka wa t ta hito de su.
- 8 今 オペラ を 作曲 して  
 ima o pe ra o sak kyoku shi te  
 いる そう です。  
 i ru sō de su.
- 9 とても いそがしい と 言って  
 to te mo i so ga shi i to i t te  
 います。他 の 約束 は  
 i ma su hoka no yaku soku wa  
 断る のに、マージャン に  
 kotowa ru no ni, mā ja n ni  
 誘う と 必ず 来ます。②  
 saso u to kanarazu ki masu.
- 10 この 間 も、アルゼンチン 料理  
 ko no aida mo, a ru ze n chi n ryō ri  
 を ごちそう してくれると いった  
 o gochi sō shite ku re ru to i t ta  
 ので、楽しみ に して いました。  
 no de, tano shi mi ni shi te i mashi ta.
- 11 三 時 間 前 に 電話 が  
 san ji kan mae ni den wa ga  
 かかって きました。  
 ka ka t te ki mashita.

- 7 – Yes. But Manolita is quite an eccentric!  
*(yes) (but / Manolita / [announce] / changed / person / it is)*
- 8 At the moment she says she's writing an opera.  
*(now / opera / [object] / composition-be doing / have heard)*
- 9 She says she's very busy. Even though she's been refusing all her other dates, whenever we invite her for Mah-jong she always shows up.  
*(very / be busy / [quotation] / say) (other / [relation] / date / [announce] / refuse / even though // mah-jong / [goal] / invite / when // without fail / come)*
- 10 The other day she had said she would make us an Argentinian diner and so we rejoiced.  
*(this / time interval / also / Argentina-cuisine / [object] / delight-do / do for us / [quotation] / have said / because // rejoice / [goal] / was doing)*
- 11 Three hours earlier, the telephone rang.  
*(three-hour-before / [time] / telephone / [subject] / function / came)*



8. sah'kyokoo 9. kotowahroo ... sahsu/oo

## Notes

- ② マージャン **Mah-jong** is a game originally from China, played with four people, with rules similar to Rummy. It was very popular in America and Europe in the 1920s and is today a semi-obligatory part of all Japanese employees. In Japan it is played with large sums of money, and very often large sections of a paycheck will be won or lost. It has also been experiencing a resurgence in popularity in the west in the past several years.

- 12 <sup>まえ</sup> 前 <sup>ひ</sup> の <sup>ひょうき</sup> 日 から 病 気 <sup>だ</sup> だ <sup>た</sup> た <sup>そう</sup> っ っ た そ う  
 mae no hi ka ra byō ki da t ta sō  
 です。ですから お 料 理 <sup>りょうり</sup> は  
 de su. de su ka ra o ryō ri wa  
 作 <sup>つく</sup> れ なく な っ た そ う です。でも  
 tsuku re na ku na t ta sō de su. de mo  
 食 <sup>しょくご</sup> 後 に <sup>する</sup> す る マー ジ ャ ン は  
 shoku go ni su ru mā ja n wa  
 大 <sup>だいじょうぶ</sup> 丈 夫 だ と 言 <sup>い</sup> う の です。③  
 dai jō bu da to i u no de su.
- 13 マノリータ は <sup>ちょうし</sup> い つ も こ の 調 子  
 ma no rī ta wa i tsu mo ko no chō shi  
 です が、と っ て も <sup>あたた</sup> 温 かい <sup>ひと</sup> 人 な  
 de su ga, to te mo atata ka i hito na  
 の で、友 <sup>とも</sup> 達 <sup>だち</sup> が た く さ ん い ま す。  
 no de, tomo dachi ga ta ku sa n i ma su
- 14 <sup>こんど</sup> 今 度 <sup>しょうかい</sup> 紹 介 し ま す。  
 kon do shō kai shi masu. □

12. tsookoorénahku ... chokoogo 13. ahtahtahkai 14. chō-kai

## Notes

③ だ っ た **datta**, low degree equivalent for だ っ た **deshita**, *it was*.

- 12 Apparently, she had been sick since the day before. And so she couldn't make dinner. But she said mah-jong after dinner was always all right.

(before/ [relation] / day / from / sickness / it was / have heard) (for this reason / [familiarity]-cuisine / [announce] / could not make / became / have heard) (however / dinner-after / [time] / do / mah-jong / [announce] / without problem / it is / [quotation] / say / it's that)

- 13 With her it's always like that, but because she's a very warm person, she has many friends.

(Manolita / [announce] / always / this / manner / it is / but // very / be warm / person / it is / because // friend / [subject] / many / exist)

- 14 I'll introduce you next time.

(next time / introduce-do)

~~~~~



Exercise 1

- ① ^に ^{かい} 二階 だて の イギリス の バス
ni kai date no igirisu no basu
に ^の 乗った こと が あります か。
ni notta koto ga arimasu ka.
- ② この ^{たてもの} 建物 だけ ^{そうこ} 倉庫 です。他 ^{ほか}
kono tatemono dake sōko desu. hoka
の ^{たてもの} 建物 は ^{みんな} 皆 ^{じむしょ} 事務所 です。
no tatemono wa minna jimusho desu.

Exercise 2

... に ^{ことば} 言葉 を ^い 入れ なさい

- ① Have you already eaten Japanese food?
.....
- ② Yesterday I met your American friend.
kinō anata no
.. aimashita
- ③ There are two children.
..... ga

③ ^{しごと}仕事 が いそがしい のに ^{やま}山
shigoto ga isogashii noni yama

へ 行く の ですか。
e iku no desu ka.

④ ^{かんたん}簡単 な ので すぐ できました。
kantan na node sugu dekimashita.

⑤ ^{あめ}雨 が ^ふ降っている そうです。
ame ga futte iru sō desu.

Answers to Exercise 1

① Have you already been on an English double-decker bus? ② Only this building is a warehouse. All the others are offices. ③ Will you go to the mountain even if you are so busy? ④ Oh, it's so easy. I got it right away. ⑤ I have heard it's raining.

④ I have heard there are bears in the mountains.

.....

⑤ Because I love it, I bought it all.

.....,

Answers to Exercise 2

① nihon ryōri o tabeta koto ga arimasu ka. ② - amerikajin no tomodachi ni -. ③ kodomo - futari imasu. ④ yama ni kuma ga iru sō desu. ⑤ daisuki na node, zenbu kaimashita.

まとめ

matome

Revision and Notes

1. So it is working out all right with just the official transliteration? It is not that difficult, is it? So now we are going to take another step further. You have certainly noticed that in the vast majority of cases, the **u** in the official transcription is closer to our “oo”. So we won’t bother with notifying you, unless it is pronounced differently. That is, either it’s pronounced as a more closed in “ū”, or else it is left unpronounced completely.

2. It has been a long time since we have said anything about the **writing**. There is something particular about kanji. You have already seen that each kanji character can correspond to one, two, and sometimes three syllables. And when it is in a compound word, we can usually tell which syllable(s) corresponds to which character.

For example: in 建物 **tatemono**, *building*, 建 is pronounced **tate** (*construct*) and 物 is pronounced **mono** (*thing*). But (there’s always a but) in some compounds two kanji will correspond to one or more syllables and we cannot tell which syllable goes with which character. Take three very common words: *today* (cf. Lesson 11, item 6, and Lesson 12, item 1): 今日 where the two characters together are pronounced **kyō**. And *yesterday* (cf. Lesson 8, item 1; Lesson 12, item 13) 昨日 where the two characters are pronounced **kinō** and cannot be separated. The same is true of *tomorrow*, (cf. Lesson 2, item 7) 明日, a two-character compound pronounced **ashita**, also without possible separation. The same phenomenon shows up again in a number of familial terms: 叔父 **oji**, *my uncle* (Lesson 32, item 1), お祖父さん **ojiisan**, *grandfather*, お祖母さん **obaasan**, *grandmother* (Lesson 39, item 1).

Lesson Forty-Two 42

3. In every language there exist a number of decisive words. In Japanese, one of these words is **こと koto**. Its meaning is difficult to define in English, but it's something like "thing, event, fact, element...". At any event, this **koto** is used in many common and necessary constructions, following the form: verb + **こと koto** + particle + another verb. We have seen the most important instances of this pattern.

It's time to take another look:

…**ことに** します (する) **koto ni shimasu (suru)** (literally: "fact of / [goal] / to do"), *to decide to* (cf. Lesson 32, item 3; Lesson 37, item 7).

…**ことになり**ます (なる) **koto ni narimasu (naru)** (literally: "fact of / [goal] / become"), *turn out that* (cf. Lesson 32, item 12; Lesson 36, item 8).

…**こと が** できます (できる) **koto ga dekimasu (dekiru)** (literally: "doing / [subject] / possible"), *can*, plus its corresponding negation (cf. Lesson 34, item 14; Lesson 39, item 12).

Verb in low degree ending in **u** + **こと が** あります (ある) **koto ga arimasu (aru)** (literally: "fact of / [subject] / fact of"), *it happens that*, plus its corresponding negative form (cf. Lesson 36, item 3). Not confused with: verb in low degree ending in **ta** + **こと が** あります (ある), *to have already had the occasion of* (cf. Lesson 41, items 1 and 2).

Another construction: …**こと は** **koto wa** + adjective, *it is... to* (cf. Lesson 32, item 6; Lesson 36, item 14). We can also look at Lesson 38, item 3: …**と** いう **こと** です **to iu koto desu**, or Lesson 38, item 9: …**の** **こと** です **no koto desu**, to explain the concept further.

42 4. We will finish our revision chapter with a bit of a tour –or perhaps a grand tour –through the verbs we have covered recently. You have noticed already that these verbs don't have much by way of conjugation! All the same, it is important to know how to construct each form for each verb. That is what we are going to tackle right now.

An enormous quantity of verbs are formed from a noun of Chinese origin, usually two kanji, plus the Japanese verb します *shimasu* (middle degree) or する *suru* (low degree), which means *to do*. We have already come across them often, but here we will lay them all out in the low degree of the present-future tense.

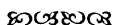
Lesson 15, item 3, and Lesson 25, item 8: 結婚する *kekkon suru* (“marriage-do”), *to get married*. Lesson 15, item 9: 再婚する *saikon suru* (“remarriage-do”), *to remarry*. Lesson 20, item 12, 禁煙する *kin.en suru* (“no smoking-do”), *to quit smoking*. Lesson 23, item 2: 卒業する *sotsugyō suru* (“diploma-do”), *to graduate*; item 9: 入院する *nyū.in suru* (“enter hospital-do”), *to go to the hospital*; item 13: 退院する *tai.in suru* (“leave hospital-do”), *to get out of the hospital*; item 14: 安心する *anshin suru* (“tranquility-do”), *calm*. Lesson 25, item 4: 出版する *shuppan suru* (“publication-do”), *to publish*. Lesson 27, item 12: 心配する *shinpai suru* (“worry-do”), *to worry*. Lesson 32, item 1: 出発する *shuppatsu suru* (“depart-do”), *to leave*; item 9: 旅行する *ryokō suru* (“travel-do”), *to travel*. Lesson 34, item 13: 入居する *nyūkyō suru* (“enter the house-do”), *to settle in a house*. Lesson 38, item 1: 説明する *setsumei suru* (“explanation-do”), *to explain*; item 12: 入学する *nyūgaku suru* (“enter school-do”), *to enter school or university*. Lesson 40, item 2: 案内する *annai suru* (“guide-do”), *to guide*. Lesson 41, item 8: 作曲する *sakkyoku suru* (“composition-do”), *to compose*; item 10: ごちそうする *gochisō suru* (“delight-do”), *to delight; to prepare a meal*; item 14: 紹介する *shōkai suru* (“introduction-do”), *to introduce*.

That is quite a long list, but there are hundreds more like that. A great advantage is that each of those nouns can be used as a noun no matter what the sentence; and all you need is to know one verb –する

suru –able to speak hundreds of verbs in this format. So **する suru** is simple: aside from the low degree **する suru**, all other forms are built on the base of **し shi**. Therefore: *I (you...) do*: **する suru** (low degree), **します shimasu** (middle degree); *I don't do*: **しない shinai** (low degree), **しません shimasen** (middle degree); *I (you...) did*: **した shita** (low degree), **しました shimashita** (middle degree); *I didn't do*: **しなかった shinakatta** (low degree), **しませんでした shimasen deshita** (middle degree).

And for the series of verbs indicating that one is in the middle of doing something: *I'm doing*: **している shite iru** (low degree), **しています shite imasu** (middle degree); *I am not doing*: **していない shite inai** (low degree), **していません shite imasen** (middle degree); *I was doing*: **していた shite ita** (low degree), **していました shite imashita** (middle degree). These are all forms you are just about fully familiar with by now. And what happens in the end? There is a base **し shi**, and the change of forms consists of nothing more than adding different suffixes to the same base. It is a principle worth noting, because it is how we proceed in changing the forms for all verbs, and **for all verbs the suffixes are the same**. The only small difficulty is that at times the same verb will be used with more than one base for the suffixes. But let's not get ahead of ourselves. We will see that in our next revision chapter. Nothing to worry about, though, just keep an eye on how the verbs work in the next few lessons!

5. Some final notes on a few verbs here: the verb **聞く kiku** means either *to listen* (cf. Lesson 29, item 8), or *to ask* (cf. Lesson 39, item 4). The verb **できる dekiru** also has two different definitions. The first is *be possible* (cf. Lesson 13, item 9; Lesson 18, item 12; Lesson 26, items 2, 3, 4; Lesson 30, item 6; Lesson 34, item 14). The second is *be produced, to be made* (cf. Lesson 40, items 5 and 12).



S. F.
 esu efu

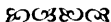
- 1- あさ^{えい}つて映^が画^みを^み見^みに^みい^みき^みま^みす。
 a sa t te ei ga o mi ni i ki ma su.
- 2- ど^{えい}んな映^が画^みを^み見^みる^みの^みで^みす^みか。
 do n na ei ga o mi ru no de su ka.
- 3- 僕^{ぼく}は S. F. が^{だい}大^{だい}好^すき^すで^すす。
 boku wa esu efu ga dai su ki de su.
- 4 あ^{えい}さ^{えい}つ^{えい}て見^みに^み行^いこ^いう^いと
 a sa t te mi ni i kō to
 お^{おも}も^{おも}つ^{おも}てい^いる^い映^{えい}画^がは^が「^{うちゅう}宇^{うちゅう}宙^{うちゅう}」
 omot te i ru ei ga wa u chū
 冒^{ぼう}険^{けん}」と^とい^いま^ます。^①
 bō ken to i i ma su.
- 5- 僕^{ぼく}は^{ぼく}も^もう^う見^みま^みし^みた^た。お^{おも}も^もし^しろ^ろい^い
 boku wa mō mi mashi ta. o moshi ro i
 だ^だす^すよ。
 de su yo.
- 6 そ^にれ^には^に二^に千^{せん}五^ご百^{ひゃく}六^{ろく}年^{ねん}
 so re wa ni sen go hyaku roku nen
 に^お起^おこ^こる^る物^{もの}語^{がたり}で^です。
 ni o ko ru mono gatari de su.

Lesson Forty-Three 43

Science Fiction

(science fiction)

- 1 – I'm going to the movies the day after tomorrow.
(day after tomorrow / movies / [object] / watch / [goal] / go)
- 2 – What kind of movie are you going to see?
(what kind / movie / [object] / watch / it's that / [question])
- 3 – I love science fiction.
(me / [announce] / science fiction / [subject] / be loved / it is)
- 4 The film I'm thinking about going to see the day after tomorrow is called *Space Adventure*.
(day after tomorrow / watch / [goal] / let's go / [quotation] / think / movie / [announce] / space-adventure / [quotation] / say)
- 5 – I've seen it. It's good!
(me / [announce] / already / have watched) (interesting / it is / [engagement])
- 6 It's a story that takes place in the year 2506.
(that / [announce] / two thousand-five hundred-six-year / [time] / take place / story / it is)



Notes

- ① 行こう *ikō*, *let's go*, low degree form for 行きましょう *ikimashō*. Before the phrase と 思っている *to omotte iru* (cf. Lesson 28, paragraph 4), the low degree is mandatory.

- 7 地球ちきゅう の ロケット の 出発点しゅつぱつてん
 chi kyū no ro ke t to no shup patsu ten
 は 月つき です。
 wa tsuki de su.
- 8 そして 他ほか の 星ほし と 惑星わくせい へ
 so shi te hoka no hoshi to waku sei e
 そこ から 飛び立つと の です。
 so ko ka ra to bi ta tsu no de su.
- 9 でも 宇宙うちゅう の 果ては から 地球ちきゅう
 de mo u chū no ha te ka ra chi kyū
 を 侵略しんりやく する 悪者わるもの が 出て
 o shin ryaku su ru waru mono ga de te
 きます。
 ki ma su.
- 10 ヒーロー は 地球ちきゅう の 安全あんぜん を
 hī rō wa chi kyū no an zen o
 守るまも ため に、宇宙うちゅう の 彼方かなた
 mamoru tame ni, u chū no kanata
 まで 冒険ぼうけん に 行くい の です。
 ma de bō ken ni i ku no de su.
- 11 そして 敵国てきこく の 悪者わるもの の 妹いもうと
 so shi te teki koku no waru mono no imōto
 に 恋こい を する の です。
 ni koi o su ru no de su.
 最後さいご は ハッピー・エンド です。
 sai go wa ha p pi e n do de su.

- 7 The earth's rockets depart from the moon.
(earth / [relation] / rocket / [relation] / departure point / [announce] / moon / it is)
- 8 That's where they take off from towards other stars and planets.
(then / other / [relation] / star / and / planet / [destination] / there / from / take off / it's that)
- 9 But from the far reaches of the universe, a bad guy appears to invade the earth.
(but / universe / [relation] / end / from / earth / [object] / invasion-do / bad guy / [subject] / appear / come)
- 10 To save the planet, the hero leaves on an adventure to the other side of the universe.
(hero / [announce] / earth / [relation] / security / [object] / protect / in order to // universe / [relation] / far side / until / adventure / [goal] / go / it's that)
- 11 Then he falls in love with the younger sister of the bad guy from the enemy country. It has a happy ending.
(then / enemy country / [relation] / bad guy / [relation] / younger sister / [goal] / love / [object] / do / it's that) (end / [announce] happy ending / it is)

~~~~~

僕は SF が大好きです。



12 - それなら 宇宙 冒険 では  
 so re na ra u chū bō ken de wa  
 ありませんね。恋の冒険  
 a ri ma se n ne. koi no bō ken  
 です ね。  
 de su ne.

13 話の内容を全部聞いて  
 hanashi no nai yō o zen bu ki i te  
 しまったので もう見に行く  
 shi ma t ta no de mō mi ni i ku  
 気がしません。僕には、恋の  
 ki ga shi ma sen. boku ni wa, koi no  
 冒険なんて 興味がありません。  
 bō ken na n te kyō mi ga a ri ma se n. □

\*\*\*

れん しゅう  
 練習 renshū

### Exercise 1

① 来年の春 アパート を 買おう  
 rainen no haru apāto o kaō  
 と 思っています。  
 to omotte imasu.

② このごろ は とても いそがしい  
 konogoro wa totemo isogashii  
 です から もう 旅行 に 行く  
 desu kara mō ryokō ni iku



- 12 – Then it isn't an adventure in space, it's an adventure in love!  
*(if so / space-adventure / it's not / [agreement]) (love / [relation] / adventure / it is / [agreement])*
- 13 Now that I've heard the whole story, I don't want to go see it anymore. I'm not interested in adventures in love!  
*(story / [relation] / contents / [object] / entire / hear / do to completion / because // anymore / watch / [goal] / go / spirit / [subject] / not do) (me / [attribution] / [emphasis] / love / [relation] / adventure / so-called / interest / [subject] / don't exist)*

\*\*\*

気がしません。

ki ga shimasen.

- ③ 自動車を作るために

jidōsha o tsukuru tame ni

工場を建てます。

kōjō o tatemasu.

- ④ パンを作るために小麦

pan o tsukuru tame ni komugi

を使います。

o tsukaimasu.

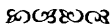
- ⑤ それなら <sup>せん せい</sup>先生 も S. F. に  
 sorenara sensei mo esu efu ni  
<sup>きようみ</sup>興味 が ある でしょう。  
 kyōmi ga aru deshō.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

... に <sup>こと ば</sup>言葉 を <sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① What kind of song do you like?  
 ..... uta . . . . .
- ② I bought a book that seems interesting.  
 ..... hon . . . . .
- ③ It is entitled, *Depart for the Stars*.  
 ..... . . . . .
- ④ There are 1,298 pages.  
 ..... pēji . . . . .



### Answers to Exercise 1

① I'm thinking about buying an apartment in the spring of next year. ② Because I am very busy this time, I don't want to travel anymore. ③ To make cars, we build factories. ④ To make bread, we use wheat. ⑤ Under those conditions, you too, Professor, are interested in science fiction.

\*\*\*

⑤ Are you interested in tennis?

.....

⑥ I've already seen it.

.....

### Answers to Exercise 2

① donna – ga suki desu ka. ② omoshirosō na – o kaimashita.  
③ hoshi e no shuppatsu to iimasu. ④ sen ni hyaku kyū jū hachi – arimasu. ⑤ tenisu ni kyōmi ga arimasu ka. ⑥ mō mimashita.

~~~~~

44 ^{だい よん じゅう よん か} 第四十四課 dai yon jū yon ka

ホテル
ho te ru

- 1- おはよう ございます。プリンス・
o ha yō go za i masu. pu ri n su
ホテル で ございます。①
ho te ru de go za i masu.
- 2- ^{へ や}部屋 の ^{よ やく}予約 を おねがい
he ya no yoyaku o o ne ga i
したい の です けれども…②
shi ta i no de su ke re do mo...
- 3- ^{ひと り}お 一人 さま ですか。③
o hito ri sa ma de su ka.
- 4- ^{か ない}いいえ、家内 と ^{こ ども}子供 が
i i e, ka nai to ko do mo ga
^{ふた り}二人 います。
futa ri i masu.
- 5- ^{おと な}大人 ^{ふた り}二人、^{こ ども}子供 ^{ふた り}二人 ^{ぜん ぶ}全部
otona futa ri, ko do mo futa ri zenbu
で ^{よん めい}四名 さま ですね。ご
de yon mei sa ma de su ne. go
^{たい ざい}滞在 は いつ まで ですか。
tai zai wa i tsu ma de de su ka.

Lesson Forty-Four 44

The Hotel

(hotel)

- 1 – Good Morning. This is the Prince Hotel.
(good morning) (prince hotel / it is)
- 2 – I would like to reserve a room...
(room / [relation] / reservation / [object] / request-want to do / it's that / even though)
- 3 – For one person?
([polite]-one person-Mr / it is / [question])
- 4 – No, there are also my wife and two children.
(no / my wife / and / child / [subject] / two person / exist)
- 5 – Two adults and two children, in total four people. How long will you be staying?
(adult / two person / child / two person / total / [means] / four person Mr / it is / [agreement]) ([polite]-stay / [announce] / when / until / it is / [question])



Notes

- ① で ございます **de gozaimasu**. Step back a bit and take another look at Lesson 21, paragraph 4. Here is a special example of a verb in high degree. For the most common verbs, high degree is not a different form of the same verb, but actually a different verb altogether. This is the case for the most common adjective in Japanese, いい **ii** (cf. Lesson 23, note 5).
で ございます **de gozaimasu** is the high degree form of です **desu**, *it is*, if you are speaking of yourself or of those close to you.
- ② けれども **keredomo**, at the end of a preposition, means *even though*, but it is also used, as in the current example, as a softener, where we might say "Excuse me, but...". It is very common to end a sentence this way when being noncommittal. (cf. also Lesson 40, item 7)
- ③ お 一人 さま **o hitori sama**. *One single person* is 一人 **hitori**. The お **o** and さま **sama** are there to indicate politeness (cf. also item 5).

- 6- 来月らいげつ の 十二日じゅうに にち から 十五日じゅうご にち
 rai getsu no jū ni nichi ka ra jū gonichi
 まで おねがい したい の ですが…
 ma de o ne ga i shita i no de su ga…
- 7- 来月らいげつ は 大変たいへん 混こんで おります
 rai getsu wa tai hen ko n de o ri ma su
 ので、ちょっと 離はなれた 二部屋ふたへや
 no de, cho t to hanare ta futa he ya
 ですが、よろしい でしょう か。④⑤
 de su ga, yo ro shi i de shō ka.
- 8- 同じおな階かい ですか。
 ona ji kai de su ka.
- 9- はい、そう で ございます。⑥
 ha i sō de go za i masu.
- 10- よろしく おねがい します。
 yo ro shi ku o ne ga i shi ma su.
- 11- チェック・イン の 時間じかん は
 che k ku i n no ji kan wa
 正午しょうご から で ございます。①
 shō go ka ra de go za i ma su.
- 12- (妻つまに) 部屋へや の 予約よやく を したよ。
 (tsuma ni) he ya no yoyaku o shita yo.
 ちょっと 離はなれて いる 部屋へや だ
 cho t to hana re te i ru he ya da
 けど 同じおな フロア だって。⑦⑧
 ke do ona ji fu ro a da t te.

- 6 – I would like to make the reservation for next month, from the 12th to the 15th.
(next month / [relation] / ten-two-day / from / ten-five-day / until / request-want to do / it's that / even though)
- 7 – We're very busy next month, would it be alright to have two rooms not next to each other?
(next month / [emphasis] / terribly / be congested / because // a bit / be distant / two-room / it is / but // be good / you think that / [question])
- 8 – Are they on the same floor?
(be same / floor / it is / [question])
- 9 – Yes.
(yes / so / it is)
- 10 – That'll do.
(well / please)
- 11 – You can check in any time after noon.
(check in / [relation] / time / [announce] / noon / from / it is)
- 12 – (to his wife) I made the reservations. The rooms are a little apart, but she said they're both on the same floor.
(his wife / [attribute]) (room / [relation] / reservation / [object] / did / [engagement]) (a little / distant / room / it is / even though // be same / floor / she said that)

~~~~~

## Notes

- ④ おります **orimasu**, the high degree version of います **imasu**, if you are speaking of yourself and those close to you.
- ⑤ よろしい **yoroshii**, cf. Lesson 23, note 5.
- ⑥ そうで ございます **sō de gozaimasu**, cf. note 1. High degree version of そうです **sō desu**, *it is, yes*, when speaking of yourself.
- ⑦ けど **kedo**, abbreviated form of けれども **keredomo**, *although*, in familiar language.
- ⑧ だって **datte**. In casual and familiar language, this is used to report what someone else has said.

13 - それじゃ、仕方しかたがないわね。  
so re ja, shi kata ga na i wa ne.

まあ、いいわ。  
ma a, i i wa. □

\*\*\*

れん しゅう  
練習 rensū

Exercise 1

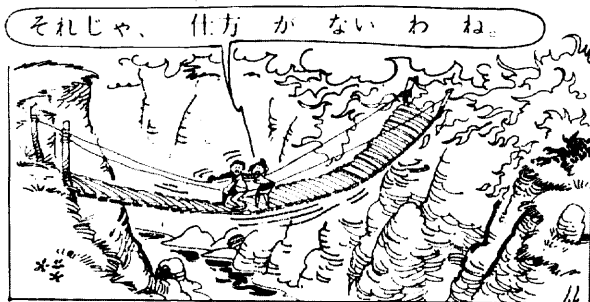
- ① もしもし 上原うえはらで ございます。  
moshimoshi uehara de gozaimasu.
- ② 小さい バッグ しか ありません  
ちい ちい  
chiisai baggu shika arimasen  
が、よろしい でしょう か。  
ga, yoroshii deshō ka.
- ③ 二十二日にじゅうににち から 三十日さんじゅうにち まで  
ni jū ichi nichi kara san jū nichi made  
プリンス・ホテル に います。  
purinsu-hoteru ni imasu.
- ④ 正午しょうご に ホテル の 前まえ で  
shōgo ni hoteru no mae de  
あ  
会いましょう。  
aimashō.

\*\*\*



- 13 – Well, nothing to be done. I suppose that's fine!  
(so / way to do / [subject] / doesn't exist / [softener] /  
[agreement]) (well / be good / [softener])

\*\*\*



- ⑤ 切符<sup>きっぷ</sup> を 三<sup>さん</sup> 枚<sup>まい</sup> おねがい したい  
kippu o san mai o negai shitai  
の です けれども…  
no desu keredomo…

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Hello, this is Mr. Uehara. ② We only have small bags, would that be alright? ③ From the 21st to the 30th, I'll be at the Prince Hotel. ④ Let's meet at noon in front of the hotel. ⑤ I would like three tickets, please.

\*\*\*

45 Exercise 2

... に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 を <sup>い</sup>入れ なさい

- ① The vacation is from the 23rd to the 26th.  
 ..... kara .....  
 ..... made desu
- ② There are two of us.  
 .....
- ③ We can't do anything about it.  
 ..... desu ne
- ④ Starting next month, I only work in the afternoon.  
 ..... wa .....

45 <sup>だい よん じゅう ご か</sup>第四十五課 dai yon jū go ka

<sup>ぎん こう</sup>銀行  
gin kō

- 1 - <sup>たびたび</sup>度々 <sup>にほん</sup>日本 に <sup>く</sup>来る から、<sup>こうざ</sup>口座  
 tabi tabi ni hon ni kuru kara, kō za  
<sup>ひら</sup>を <sup>ひら</sup>開きたい の <sup>です</sup>ですが...  
 o hira ki ta i no de su ga...
- 2 <sup>こうざ</sup>口座 は <sup>かんたん</sup>簡単に <sup>ひら</sup>開く こと  
 kō za wa kantan ni hira ku ko to  
 が できます か。①  
 ga de ki ma su ka.

- ⑤ Because we made reservations in the same hotel, let's leave together!

..... ni ....., .....  
ikimashō

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① yasumi wa ni jū san nichi – ni jū roku nichi –. ② futari desu.  
③ shikata ga nai –. ④ raigetsu kara – gogo shika hatarakimasen.  
⑤ onaji hoteru – yoyaku shita node issho ni –.
- 

## Lesson Forty-Five 45

### The Bank

(bank)

- 1 – Because I often come to Japan, I would like to open an account.  
(often / Japan / [place] / come / because // bank account / [object] / want to open / it's that / but)
- 2 Is it possible to open an account easily?  
(bank account / [announce] / easy / [adverb] / open / fact of / [subject] / be possible / [question])



### Notes

- ① cf. Lesson 42, paragraph 3.

- 3- はい。普通 口座 なら、外国人  
 ha i. fu tsū kō za na ra, gai koku jin  
 でも 開く こと が できます。  
 de mo hiraku ko to ga de ki ma su.
- 4- それでは、私 も 口座 を  
 so re dewa, watakushi mo kō za o  
 開きましょう。  
 hira ki ma shō.
- 5 後 二日 で カナダ へ 帰ります。  
 ato futsuka de ka na da e kae ri ma su.
- 6 帰国 の 前 に、残った 日本  
 ki koku no mae ni, noko t ta ni hon  
 円 を 預けて いく こと に  
 en o azuke te i ku ko to ni  
 します。②  
 shi ma su.
- 7- 普通 口座 でも 利子 が  
 fu tsū kō za de mo ri shi ga  
 つきます から、来年 の 冬 また  
 tsu ki ma su ka ra, rai nen no fuyu ma ta  
 日本 に 遊び に 来る 時、  
 ni hon ni asobi ni ku ru toki,  
 お金 が 増えて います。③  
 o kane ga fu e te i ma su.

- 3 – Yes. If it is a standard account, even a foreigner can open one.  
*(yes) (standard-account / if it is / foreigner / even / open / fact of / [subject] / be possible)*
- 4 – So then I'll open one.  
*(so / me / too / account / [object] / let's open)*
- 5 In two days I return to Canada.  
*(after-two days / [time] / Canada / [destination] / return)*
- 6 Before I go back, I want to deposit the yen I have left over.  
*(return to country / [relation] / before / [time] / remain / Japan-yen / [object] / deposit / go / fact of / [object] / do)*
- 7 – There is interest even on a standard account, so when you come back to Japan for vacation next winter, your money will have increased.  
*(standard-account / even / interest / [subject] / be attached / because // next year / [relation] / winter / again / Japan / [place] / enjoy / [goal] / come / time // [familiarity]-money / [subject] / be increased)*



## Notes

- ② cf. Lesson 42, paragraph 3.
- ③ 遊ぶ *asobu*. This verb is the opposite of 働く *hataraku*, to work. It can therefore indicate anything that is not work.

- 8 じゃ、明日 一時半 に 銀行  
 ja, ashita ichi ji han ni gin kō  
 の 前 で 会いましょう。  
 no mae de a i ma shō.

よくじつ ぎんこう まえ  
 翌日、銀行の前で  
 yoku jitsu, gin kō no mae de

- 9- 予定外 の 買物 を した ので、  
 yo tei gai no kai mono o shi ta no de,  
 お 財布 が 空っぽ に なって  
 o sai fu ga kara p po ni na t te  
 しまいました。  
 shi ma i ma shi ta.
- 10 だから 口座 を 開く こと  
 da ka ra kō za o hira ku ko to  
 が できなく なりました。  
 ga de ki na ku na ri ma shi ta.
- 11 それに 空港 までの バス代  
 so re ni kū kō ma de no ba su dai  
 も なく なって しまいました。  
 mo na ku na t te shi ma i mashi ta.
- 12 空港 では 飛行場 使用料  
 kū kō de wa hi kō jō shi yō ryō  
 も 払わなければ なりません。  
 mo hara wa na ke re ba na ri ma se n.

8 Good, so we'll meet tomorrow at 1:30 in front of the bank.

(good / tomorrow / one-o'clock-half / [time] / bank / [relation] / front / [place] / let's meet)

The next day, in front of the bank

(next day / bank / [relation] / front / [place])

9 – I bought more than I planned, so my wallet is completely empty!

(unplanned / [relation] / purchase / [object] / did / because // [familiarity]-wallet / [subject] / completely empty / [goal] / become / do to completion)

10 So I can't open the account.

(so / account / [object] / open / fact of / [subject] / not be possible / became)

11 I don't even have enough to pay for the bus to the airport!

(also / airport / until / [relation] / bus ticket cost / also / not exist / became / do to completion)

12 And I have to pay the airport tax there!

(airport / [place] / [emphasis] / airport tax / also / must pay)

おもしろい

後 二日 で カナダ へ 帰ります。



- 13 こんな おねがいで <sup>わる</sup>悪い けれど、  
 ko n na o ne ga i de waru i ke re do,  
<sup>いちまんえん</sup>一万円 <sup>か</sup>貸して くれませんか。④  
 ichi man en ka shi te ku re ma se n ka. □

\*\*\*

れん しゅう  
 練習 rensū

Exercise 1

- ① <sup>いっしょ</sup>一緒 <sup>い</sup>に行った <sup>ほう</sup>方がいいです。  
 issho ni itta hō ga ii desu.
- ② <sup>じん</sup>カナダ人 <sup>ともだち</sup>の友達 から もらった お  
 kanadajin no tomodachi kara moratta o  
<sup>さけ</sup>酒 <sup>ぜんぶ</sup>は全部 <sup>の</sup>飲んで しまいました。  
 sake wa zenbu nonde shimaimashita.
- ③ <sup>やまぐち</sup>山口 <sup>さん</sup>さんの <sup>ところ</sup>ところ <sup>へ</sup>へ <sup>たびたび</sup>度々  
 yamaguchi san no tokoro e tabitabi  
<sup>あそ</sup>遊び <sup>い</sup>に行きます。  
 asobi ni ikimasu.

\*\*\*



- 13 I feel terrible, but you couldn't let me 10,000 yen, could you?

(this sort / request / [means] / be bad / although // one-10,000-yen / lend / not do for me / [question])

〆〆〆〆

## Notes

- ④ けれど **keredo**. Yet another abbreviation for けれども **keredomo**, *although*, in casual language (cf. Lesson 44, note 7).

\*\*\*

- ① そんなに簡単な料理なら  
sonna ni kantan na ryōri nara

子供でもできます。

kodomo demo dekimasu.

- ⑤ 遠いですけれども、ぜひ行きたい  
tooi desu keredomo, zehi ikitai

とおもいます。

to omoimasu.

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① It would be better if I went with you. ② I drank all the alcohol my Canadian friend gave me. ③ I often go to Yamaguchi's place. ④ A recipe so easy, even children can do it! ⑤ Although it's far, I absolutely want to go.

\*\*\*

46 Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 を <sup>い</sup>入れ なさい

- ① Come see us one of these days!  
zehi . . . . . kite kudasai
- ② I decide to open an account.  
. . . . .
- ③ Even though he's still a child, he's interested in the opera.  
mada . . . . .  
. . . . .

46 <sup>だい よんじゅうろっ か</sup>第四十六課 dai yon jū rok ka

<sup>い しゃ</sup>  
医者  
i sha

1- あなた が <sup>い</sup>胃 が <sup>いた</sup>痛い と  
a na ta ga i ga ita i to  
言 <sup>い</sup>って <sup>い</sup>ました <sup>ので</sup>、私 <sup>わたし</sup>  
i t te i mashi ta no de, watashi  
が <sup>し</sup>知 <sup>い</sup>つて <sup>しゃ</sup>いる お 医者 <sup>さま</sup>  
ga shi t te i ru o i sha sama  
に <sup>よやく</sup>予 <sup>と</sup>約 を 取 <sup>り</sup>ました。①  
ni yo yaku o to ri mashi ta.

- ④ I still want to think about it a little.  
 mō chotto shirabe . . . . . omoimasu
- ⑤ When you come back next winter, I will introduce you.  
 mata . . . . . kuru . . . . .  
 . . . . .

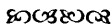
### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① – asobi ni -. ② kōza o hiraku koto ni shimasu. ③ – kodomo desu  
 keredomo, opera ni kyōmi ga arimasu. ④ – tai to -. ⑤ – rainen no  
 fuyu – toki, shōkai shimasu.

## Lesson Forty-Six 46

### At the Doctor's (doctor)

- 1 – Since you told me you had a stomach ache, I  
 made you an appointment with a doctor I know.  
*(you / [subject] / stomach / [subject] / be hurt / [quotation]  
 / was saying / because // I / [subject] / know / [polite]-doc-  
 tor-Mr. / [place] / appointment / [object] / took)*



### Notes

- ① お 医者 <sup>いしや</sup> さま o isha sama, cf. Lesson 44, note 3.

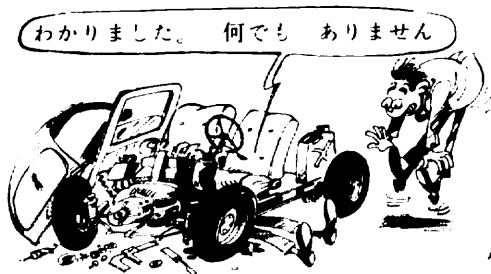
- 2- ありがとう ございます。胃潰瘍  
 a ri ga tō go za i masu. i kai yō  
 ではないかと心配して  
 de wa na i ka to shinpai shi te  
 います。②  
 i masu.
- 3- それは早くお医者さんへ  
 so re wa haya ku o i sha sa n e  
 行った方がいゝですね。  
 i t ta hō ga i i de su ne.
- 4 このごろは胃潰瘍でも早く  
 ko no go ro wa i kai yō de mo haya ku  
 治療すると、問題なく  
 chi ryō su ru to, mondai na ku  
 直るそうですから。  
 nao ru sō de su ka ra.
- 5- それで予約はいつですか。  
 so re de yoyaku wa i tsu de su ka.
- 6- 再来週の水曜日の午後  
 sa rai shū no sui yō bi no go go  
 四時十五分前です。③  
 yo ji jū go fun mae de su.

- 2 – Thank you very much. I'm worried it might be an ulcer.  
*(thank you very much) (stomach-ulcer / it's not / [question] / [quotation] / worry-be doing)*
- 3 – Then you should go see a doctor quickly.  
*(that / [announce] / quickly / [polite]-doctor-Mr. / [destination] / went / direction / [subject] / be good / it is / [agreement])*
- 4 I hear that these days even an ulcer will heal without problems if you treat it quickly.  
*(these days / [emphasis] / stomach-ulcer / even / fast / treatment-do / when // problem / not exist / heal / have heard that / because)*
- 5 – And what time is the appointment at?  
*(and / appointment / [announce] / when / it is / [question])*
- 6 – Wednesday of the week after next, at quarter to four in the afternoon.  
*(week after next / [relation] / Wednesday / [relation] / afternoon / four-o'clock-fifteen minutes-before / it is)*



## Notes

- ② cf. Lesson 36, note 6. 心配 <sup>しんぱい</sup> する **shinpai suru**, worry, is considered to be an act of thought. So the object of this worry is followed by and linked to it by と.
- ③ 四時 <sup>よじ</sup> yo ji. Oh, yes, when you tell time, *four* is pronounced よ instead of よん yon (take a quick glance at the number of this lesson!)



- 7- お かけ 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい。 どう  
 o ka ke kuda sa i. dō  
 なさいました か。 ④  
 na sa i ma shi ta ka.
- 8- 食<sup>しょくご</sup>後 一<sup>いち</sup>時<sup>じ</sup>間<sup>かん</sup> ぐ<sup>た</sup>ら<sup>い</sup> 経<sup>た</sup>つ と、 胃<sup>い</sup>  
 shoku goi chi ji kan gu ra i ta tsu to, i  
 が じんと 痛<sup>いた</sup>く なり<sup>い</sup>ます。 胃<sup>い</sup>潰<sup>かい</sup>瘍<sup>よう</sup>  
 ga ji n to ita ku na ri masu. i kai yō  
 で は ない でしょう か。 ⑤  
 de wa na i de shō ka.
- 9- ちよ<sup>み</sup>つと 見<sup>み</sup>て みま<sup>した</sup>し<sup>た</sup>ょう。 舌<sup>した</sup>  
 cho t to mi te mi ma shō. shita  
 を 出<sup>だ</sup>して 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい。 その ベッ<sup>くた</sup>ド  
 o da shi te kuda sa i. so no be d do  
 に 横<sup>よこ</sup> に な<sup>くた</sup>って 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい。  
 ni yoko ni na t te kuda sa i.
- 10 こ<sup>お</sup>こ を 押<sup>お</sup>す と、 痛<sup>いた</sup>い です  
 ko ko o o su to, ita i de su  
 か。 —い<sup>い</sup>い<sup>い</sup>え。  
 ka. -i i e.
- 11- こ<sup>お</sup>こ は? —い<sup>い</sup>い<sup>い</sup>え。 —こ<sup>お</sup>こ  
 ko ko wa? -i i e. -ko ko  
 は? —い<sup>い</sup>い<sup>い</sup>え。  
 wa? -i i e.

*(hospital)*

- 7 – Please be seated. What seems to be the problem?  
*(sit down) (how / did / [question])*
- 8 – About an hour after I eat, a deep pain hits my stomach. You don't think it's an ulcer, do you?  
*(after meal / one-hour-around / pass / when // stomach / [subject] / sharply / be hurt / become) (ulcer / it isn't / one could think / [question])*
- 9 – Let's take a look. Stick out your tongue. Lie down on the bed over there.  
*(a bit / look / let's see) (tongue / [object] / put out) (that / bed / [place] / side / [goal] / become)*
- 10 When I press here, does it hurt? –No.  
*(here / [object] / press / when // be hurt / it is / [question]) (no)*
- 11 – Here? –No. –Here? –No.

KANJI

### Notes

- ④ なさいました *nasaimashita*. The high degree equivalent of しました *shimashita*, when speaking of the other person: “You did...”.
- ⑤ じんと *jin to*. Another word that's almost impossible to translate (cf. Lesson 39, note 5), implying all sorts of sensory impressions. Here, the manner in which pain is produced. It feels as if it's coming from very far, and then all of a sudden it's quite strong. Go translate that in one word!

12 - <sup>だいじょうぶ</sup>大丈夫 <sup>de su.</sup>です。 <sup>wa ka ri ma shita.</sup>わかりました。  
<sup>なん</sup>何でも <sup>a ri ma se n.</sup>ありません。 <sup>ta da no</sup>ただの  
<sup>た</sup>食べすぎ <sup>de su.</sup>です。

13 一週間 <sup>is shū kan</sup>ぐらい <sup>gu ra i</sup>胃 <sup>i</sup>を <sup>o</sup>  
<sup>やす</sup>休ませる <sup>yasu ma se ru</sup>ため <sup>ta me</sup>に、 <sup>suko shi</sup>少し  
<sup>たべもの</sup>食物 <sup>o</sup>を <sup>hika e te</sup>控えて <sup>kuda sa i.</sup>下さい。

14 - <sup>de mo</sup>でも <sup>kon ban,</sup>今晚、 <sup>shō shin</sup>昇進 <sup>iwa i</sup>祝い <sup>ni</sup>に  
<sup>fu ra n su</sup>フランス・レストラン <sup>re su to ra n</sup>に行く <sup>ni</sup>こと <sup>i ku ko to</sup>  
<sup>ni</sup>になって <sup>na t te</sup>います <sup>i masu</sup>が… ⑥ □

\*\*\*

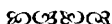
<sup>れん しゅう</sup>  
**練習** rensū

**Exercise 1**

- ① <sup>じ こ</sup>事故 <sup>あ</sup>に <sup>atta</sup>会った <sup>no de wa nai</sup>のではない  
 jiko ni atta no de wa nai



- 12 – It's fine. I see. It's nothing. You just overate.  
*(fine / it is) (have understood) (anything / it's not) (simple / [relation] / overeating / it is)*
- 13 Cut down a bit on your food for a week to give your stomach a rest.  
*(one-week / about / stomach / [object] / make rest / for // a bit / food / [object] / please reduce)*
- 14 – But tonight I'm going to a French restaurant to celebrate my promotion...  
*(but / tonight / promotion-celebration / [goal] / France-restaurant / [place] / go / fact of / [goal] become / although)*



## Notes

- ⑥ こと になつて います *koto ni natte imasu*. cf. Lesson 42, paragraph 3.



か と <sup>しんばい</sup>心配 して います。  
*ka to shinpai shite imasu.*

② <sup>あし</sup>足 が <sup>いた</sup>痛い。  
*ashi ga itai.*

③ <sup>さんじ</sup>三時 <sup>にじゅうごふん</sup>二十五分 <sup>まえ</sup>前 に <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場  
*san ji ni jū go fun mae ni kōjō*

を 出ました。  
*o demashita.*

④ <sup>たんじょうび</sup>お 誕生日 <sup>いわい</sup>祝い に <sup>しばい</sup>芝居 を  
*o tanjōbi iwai ni shibai o*  
<sup>み</sup>見 に <sup>い</sup>行きましょう。  
*mi ni ikimashō.*



## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I'm worried they might have had an accident. ② My foot hurts.  
 ③ I left the factory at twenty-five to three. ④ To celebrate your  
 birthday, let's go to the theatre. ⑤ When I go to the doctor, I'm  
 always afraid.

\*\*\*

- ⑤ It so happens that I am also going to the doctor's this after-  
 noon.

watakushi .. kyō no .... o .....  
 . iku .... .. natte imasu

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① mimi ga itai to itte imasu. ② arigatō gozaimasu. ③ yo ji jū go fun  
 mae ni -. ④ kippu o hayaku - hō ga ii desu. ⑤ - mo - gogo - isha  
 san no tokoro e - koto ni -.

~~~~~

47 第四十七課 dai yon jū nana ka

おん がく
音楽
on gaku

カクテル・パーティー で。
ka ku te ru pā tī de.

1- 何か お 飲み になります か。
nani ka o no mi ni na ri ma su ka.

シャンペン は お 好き ですか。①
sha n pe n wa o su ki de su ka.

2 加藤 さん から 音楽 が お 好き
ka tō sa n ka ra ongaku-ga o su ki

だ と うかがいました が…②
da to u kaga i ma shi ta ga...

3- はい。特 に クラシック 音楽
ha i. toku ni ku ra shi k ku on gaku

が 好き です。
ga su ki de su.

4- 何か 楽器 を なさいます か。
nani ka gak ki o na sa i ma su ka.

5- はい。オーボエ を 趣味 で
ha i. ō bo e o shu mi de

やっ て います。
ya t te i ma su.

Lesson Forty-Seven 47

Music

(music)

At a cocktail party.

(cocktail / [place])

- 1 – Are you drinking anything? Do you like champagne?
(something / [polite]-drink / [goal] / become / [question])
(champagne / [announce] / [polite]-be liked / it is / [question])
- 2 I learned from Mr. Katō that you like music.
(Katō-Mr. / from / music / [subject] / [polite]-be liked / it is / [quotation] / have heard / but)
- 3 – Yes. Especially classical music.
(yes) (principally / [adverbial] / classical-music / [subject] / be liked / it is)
- 4 – Do you play an instrument?
(something / musical instrument / [object] / do / [question])
- 5 – Yes. I play the oboe as a hobby.
(yes) (oboe / [object] / pastime / [means] / be doing)



Notes

- ① お 飲み に なります **o nomi ni narimasu**. In note 1 of Lesson 44, concerning the high degree, we said that for certain very common verbs, the high form was actually a different verb altogether. But in other cases, the high degree is formed from the verb in its “normal” state. Here it is the verb 飲む **nomu**, *to drink* surrounded by the elements お **o** and に なります **ni narimasu**. The two elements are indeed the mark of high degree verbs, when speak of the other person: *you drink*. Also in high degree is the お **o** before 好き **suki**: *you like*.
- ② うかがいました **ukagaimashita**, high degree form for 聞きました **kikimashita**, when the subject is the speaker: *I heard*.

47 6- もう どのぐらい なさって
mō do no gu ra i na sa t te

いる の ですか。③
i ru no de su ka.

7- 五 六 年 です。高等学^{こうとうがっこう}校 の
go roku nen de su. kō tō gakkō no

時^{とき} クラブ 活^{かつどう}動 で 始^{はじ}めた
toki ku ra bu katsu dō de hajime ta

の が きっかけ です。④
no ga ki k ka ke de su.

8 卒^{そつぎょう}業 して から なかなか
sotsu gyō shi te ka ra na ka na ka

吹^ふく 機^き会^{かい} が ありませ^なん。
fu ku ki kai ga a ri ma se n.

9 ですから 最^{さいきん}近 は 自^じ分^{ぶん} で 吹^ふく
de su ka ra sai kin wa ji bun de fu ku

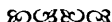
より、も^もっ^もぱ^ぱら レ^レコ^コド や カ^カセ^セツ^ツト
yo ri. mō p pa ra re kō do ya ka se t to

や ラ^ラジ^ジオ を 聞^きいて います。
ya ra ji o o ki i te i masu.

10 家^{いえ} に いる 時^{とき} は ラ^ラジ^ジオ
ie ni i ru toki wa ra ji o

を つ^つけ^けっ^っぱ^ぱなし です。
o tsu ke p pa na shi de su.

- 6 – How long have you been playing?
(already / about how much / be doing / it's that / [question])
- 7 – Five or six years. I started it in a club in high school.
(five-six-year / it is) (high school / [relation] / time / club-activity / [means] / have started / fact of / [subject] / chance / it is)
- 8 Since I graduated, I haven't had many chances to play.
(graduate-do / since / quite / blow / opportunity / [subject] / not exist)
- 9 So these days, rather than playing my own music, I listen to records, tapes, and the radio.
(so / recently / [emphasis] / oneself / [means] / blow / more than / especially / record / and / tape / and / radio / [object] / listen)
- 10 When I'm at home, the radio is always on.
(house / [place] / be / time / [emphasis] // radio / [object] / left on / it is)



Notes

- ③ なさって いる *nasatte iru*, cf. Lesson 46, note 4: *you do*.
- ④ 始めた の が *hajimeta no ga*. We know *こと koto*, meaning “fact of + verb”, in the expressions we reviewed in Lesson 42, paragraph 3. In addition to these phrases, where it's mandatory to use *こと koto*, we can also substitute *の no*, meaning *fact of*. Here, literally: “the fact of having begun as a club activity was the origin”.

一人で練習するより楽しいです。



11 - 僕ぼくの家いえに音楽おんがく好きずの仲間なかまが
 boku no ie ni on gaku zu ki no naka ma ga
じゅうに十二人にんぐらい日曜日にちようびに隔週かくしゅう
 jū ni nin gu ra i nichi yō bi ni kaku shū
 で集あつまります。よろしかったら、
 de atsu ma ri masu. yo roshi ka t ta ra,

いらっしゃいませんか。⑤⑥
 i ra s sha i ma se n ka.

12 - ぜひなかま仲間いに入れてくだ下さい。
 ze hi naka ma ni i re te kuda sa i.
 その方ほうが一人ひとりで練習れんしゅう
 so no hō ga hito ri de ren shū
 するよりたの楽しいです。
 su ru yo ri tano shi i de su. □

れん しゅう
 練習 renshū

Exercise 1

- ① このごろは映画えいがを見みに行くいより
 konogoro wa eiga o mi ni iku yori
 もっぱらテレビでみ見るのです。
 moppara terebi de miru no desu.

- 11 – Every other Sunday, 12 music-loving friends of mine meet at my house. If you're interested, why not come along?

(*me / [relation] / house / [place] / music-loved / [apposition] / friend / [subject] / ten-two-person / about / Sunday / [time] / every other week / [means] / meet up*) (if it's good / not come / [question])

- 12 – Count me in! That's much more fun than practicing alone!

(*absolutely / friend / [place] / please allow in*) (that / direction / [subject] / alone / practice-do / more than / be pleasant / it is)



Notes

- ⑤ In counting people, *one person* is 一人 **hitori** (cf. Lesson 44, item 3) and *two people* is 二人 **futari** (cf. Lesson 44, item 4). But from three onwards it's just the number, plus 人 **nin** in familiar situations and the number plus 名 **mei** in official situations (cf. Lesson 44, item 5).
- ⑥ いらっしやいませ **irasshaimasen**, the high degree equivalent to 来ませ **kimasen**, when speaking of the other person: *you do not come*.

- ② 日本へ両親をつれて行った
 nihon e ryōshin o tsurete itta
 のがきっかけです。
 no ga kikkake desu.
- ③ 生け花を趣味でやっています。
 ikebana o shumi de yatte imasu.

① ざんねん ですが、日本語 で 話す
zannen desu ga, nihongo de hanasu

機会 が なかなか ありません。
kikai ga nakanaka arimasen.

⑤ 伯父 さん から 歌舞伎 が
oji san kara kabuki ga

お好き だと 聞きました。
o suki da to kikimashita.

Exercise 2

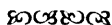
... に 言葉 を 入れ なさい

① There were two hundred people at the cocktail party last night.
..... kakuteru-pātī ni hito ga
.....

② How long have you been speaking English?
..... nasaimashita ka

③ Every other Saturday I go to a concert.
..... ongakkai

④ I love to listen to jazz.
jazu o kiku .. ga suki desu



Answers to Exercise 1

❶ These days, rather than going to the movies, it's mostly on television that I watch movies. ❷ The occasion was a trip to Japan with my parents. ❸ I do flower arrangements as a hobby. ❹ It's too bad, but I have almost no chance to speak Japanese. ❺ I heard your uncle say that you love kabuki.

❽ It's more pleasant to play than to listen.

kiku fuku

Answers to Exercise 2

❶ kinō no – ni hyaku nin imashita. ❷ eigo wa donogurai –.
 ❸ doyōbi ni kakushū de – ni ikimasu. ❹ – no –. ❺ – yori – hō ga tanoshii desu.

スズク

48 第四十八課 dai yon jū hak ka

あき の ひ の…
aki no hi no…

1- もう そろそろ ^{なつ}夏 が
mō so ro so ro natsu ga
お
終わりますね。
o wa ri ma su ne.

2 秋 ^{あき}の ^{あしおと}足音 が ^き聞こえる
aki no ashioto ga ki ko e ru
みたい ^みです ^ね。
mi ta i de su ne.

3 いわし ^{ぐも}雲 が ^う浮かんで ^{そら}いる ^{そら}空
i washigumo ga u ka n de i ru sora
や ^{ゆうや}夕焼け ^みを ^み見ると、この
ya yū ya ke o mi ru to, ko no
^よ世 ^{むな}が ^{むな}空しく ^ななります。①
yo ga munashiku na ri ma su.

4 枯葉 ^{かれは}が ^お落ちる ^のを ^み見て
kare ha ga o chi ru no o mi te
いる ^{かな}と ^{かな}悲しく ^ななります。②
i ru to kana shi ku na ri ma su.

Lesson Forty-Eight 48

Autumn Days...

(autumn / [relation] / day / [relation])

- 1 – The summer will soon be gone.
(already / softly / summer / [subject] / finish / [agreement])
- 2 It's as if one can hear the footsteps of autumn.
(autumn / [relation] / foot-noise / [subject] / be audible / as if / it is / [agreement])
- 3 When I look at the sky and see the floating autumn clouds, and the setting of the sun, the world appears so empty.
(cirrus cloud / [subject] / be floating / sky / and / twilight / [object] / look / when // this / world / [subject] / be empty / become)
- 4 When I see the falling dead leaves, I become sad.
(deadleaf/[subject]/fall/factof/[object]/be looking/when// be sad / become)

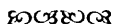


Notes

- ① いわし雲 ^いiwashigumo. These are the great wisps of clouds that lay out in the sky so thinly, resembling little waves, and form little clusters in the sky. The technical term for them is “cirrus clouds”, but where is the poetry in that? So in Japanese we have いわし雲 ^いiwashigumo (literally: “sardine cloud”!), which is inseparable from the poetic sensation of autumn.
- ② の no, cf. Lesson 47, note 4. Item 4 is literally, “when I see **the fact of** dead leaves falling”, and item 6: “when I see **the fact of** rays of the sun shining”

- 5 まった ^{あき} 全 ^ひ く 「秋 の 日 の ^し ビオロン
 matta ku aki no hi no bi o ro n
 の ^{ためいき} 溜息…」の ^し 詩 の よう
 no tame iki... no shi no yō
 です な。③
 de su na.
- 6 なつ 夏 の ^お 終 ^{ひぐ} わり の 日暮れ の ^{たいよう} 太陽
 natsuno o wari no hi gu re no tai yō
 の ^{ひかり} 光 が ^{にわ} 庭 の ^{かき} 柿 の ^き 木 の ^は 葉
 no hikari ga niwa no kaki no ki no ha
 に ^{かがや} 輝 ^み いている の を 見ると、
 ni kagaya i te i ru no o mi ru to,
 もう ^{あき} 秋 に なって しまった
 mō aki ni na t te shi ma t ta
 の か と ^{おも} 思 ^{おも} います。④
 no ka to omo i ma su.
- 7 ^{とき} 時 が ^{はや} あまり にも 早く ^す 過ぎる
 toki ga a ma ri ni mo hayaku su gi ru
 ので、^{さび} 寂 ^{きもち} しい 気持 に なります。
 no de, sabi shi i ki mochi ni na ri masu.
- 8 ^{ひと} 人 の ^{いのち} 命 ^い なんて は ^か かない
 hito no inochi na n te ha ka na i
 もの です ね。
 mo no de su ne.

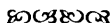
- 5 It's exactly as in the poem: "The long sobs of autumn's violins..."
(exactly / autumn / [relation] / day / [relation] / violin / [relation] / sigh / [relation] / poem / [relation] / appearance / it is / [reflection])
- 6 When I see the rays of the evening sun of late summer, shining on the leaves of the kaki tree in the garden, I see that fall is indeed here.
(summer / [relation] / end / [relation] / sundown / [relation] / sun / [relation] / ray / [subject] / garden / [relation] / kaki / [relation] / tree / [relation] / leaf / [place] / be shining / fact of / [object] / look / when // already / autumn / [goal] / become / do to completion / it's that / [question] / [quotation] / think)
- 7 Time passes too quickly, and this makes me sad.
(time / [subject] / too / fast / pass / because // be sad / feeling / [goal] / become)
- 8 Human life is but a transient thing!
(person / [relation] / life / so-called / be transient / thing / it is / [agreement])



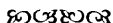
Notes

- ③ 秋の日のビオロンの溜息... aki no hi no bioron no tameiki... These are the first famous words of a translation by an equally famous Japanese poet (Ueda Bin 1874 – 1916) of the most famous line of Verlaine: "The long sobs of autumn's violins...". In the entire world, Japan has translated, and continues to translate, the most literature from other languages and countries.
- ④ 柿 kaki, an autumn fruit, bright orange in color.

- 9- あら、あなた の ご 主人 は
 a ra, a na ta no go shujin wa
 ロマンチック な 方 です ね。⑤
 ro ma n ti k ku na kata de su ne.
- 10 いつも こんな 風 です か。
 i tsumo ko n na fū de su ka.
- 11- いいえ。酔っ払った 時 だけ
 i i e. yo ppara t ta toki da ke
 です。お酒 を 飲んで いない
 de su. o sake o no n de i na i
 時 は 現実的 な 人 です よ。
 toki wa gen jitsu teki na hito de su yo.
- 12 そう で なければ、どうやって
 sō de na ke re ba, do ya t te
 冷凍 食品 を 売る 商売
 rei tō shoku hin o u ru shō bai
 が できます か。
 ga de ki ma su ka. □



- 9 – Wow, your husband is such a romantic person!
 (ah / you / [relation] / [polite]-husband / [announce] / romantic / it is / person / it is / [agreement])
- 10 Is he always like that?
 (always / that way / manner / it is / [question])
- 11 – No. Only when he's drunk. When he's sober he's much more of a realist.
 (no) (be drunk / time / only / it is) ([familiarity]-alcohol / [object] / not be drinking / time / [emphasis] // realist / it is / person / it is / [engagement])
- 12 Otherwise, how could he do his job of selling frozen foods?
 (so / if it is not / how / frozen-food / [object] / sell / business / [subject] / be possible / [question])



Notes

- ⑤ ^{カタ}方 **kata**, even though this is a noun, we can consider it as the high degree version of 人 ^{ヒト}**hito**, *person, human being*.

人の命なんてはかないものですね。



Exercise 1

- ① そうでなければ、どうやってこの
sō de nakereba, dō yatte kono
こうじょう はたら
 工場 で 働く ことができますか。
kōjō de hataraku koto ga dekimasu ka.
- ② 水族館 の 中 に 入る みたいです。
suizokukan no naka ni hairu mitai desu.
- ③ 銀行 に 入る と、すぐ 右
ginkō ni hairu to, sugu migi
 に あります。
ni arimasu.

Exercise 2

... に こと ば 言葉 を い 入れ なさい

- ① When I see the moon rise, I get sad.
 deru
- ② Your husband is a realistic person.
 go shujin
- ③ It's only when he's eaten a lot.
 takusan
- ④ It's difficult to make something good.
 .. mono

- ① 一人^{ひとり} で 散歩^{さんぽ} する の が
hitori de sanpo suru no ga

大好き^{だいす} です。
daisuki desu.

- ⑤ 海^{うみ} の よう です。
umi no yō desu.

Answers to Exercise 1

① Otherwise, how could he work in this factory? ② We think we are entering an aquarium. ③ It's just on the right when you enter the bank. ④ I love taking a walk alone. ⑤ It looks like the sea.

- ⑤ I watch the rain fall.
... futte iru ... mi ...

Answers to Exercise 2

① tsuki ga - no o miru to, kanashiku narimasu. ② - wa genjitsuteki na kata desu ne. ③ - tabeta toki dake desu. ④ ii - o tsukuru no wa muzukashii desu. ⑤ ame ga - no o - te imasu.

まとめ

matome

Revision and Notes

Excellent! You have reached the end of the first volume of *Japanese with Ease!* After this revision chapter, you will be finished with the passive phase, during which you have been inseminated with the Japanese language. Now you are ready to move on and enter the active phase, where you will productively use what you have been storing up, all while acquiring new elements!

The active phase begins with Lesson 50 in the Volume 2. No doubt you are already eager to jump in, but first, we still need to take a slight pause to make sure we really know what we know, before we can truly gain from the active phase.

1. First, we will take another look at –you guessed it –verbs. We have to “dismantle” them a bit so you can be sure to understand them and use them in all forms and degrees without difficulty. Remember what we said in Lesson 42 at the end of paragraph 4. The principle is simple (and not very unique, because it is what happens in most languages, even English!): the basic verb is a root appended with suffixes. And we now know nearly all the suffixes. For **middle degree**, we have been running over them now for such a long time they should seem second nature: it is the series of **ます masu** and its derivatives. We won't go through that one again here. But if you think you have got a gap in your memory, or a little question you would like to look over, you can go back to Lesson 7, paragraph 1, where we outlined the whole series, and to Lesson 35, paragraph 4.

Lesson Forty-Nine 49

For the the suffixes of **low degree**, we may be a bit less familiar, but we have also gone through just about everything that **する suru, to do**, has to offer in Lesson 42, paragraph 4. These are:

- **ない nai**, used to negate a verb (cf. Lesson 29, item 2: **行かない ikanai, not to go**; Lesson 38, item 1: **わからない wakaranai, not to be understandable**; Lesson 41, item 12: **作れない tsukurenai, not to be able to make**; Lesson 48, item 11: **飲んで いない nonde inai, not to be drinking**).

- **なかった nakatta**, used to negate a verb in the past tense (cf. Lesson 40, item 12: **出なかった denakatta, not to have appeared**)

- **たい tai**, used to say "I want to do such and such" (cf. Lesson 27, item 6: **会いたい aitai, I want to meet**; Lesson 31, item 1: **買いたい kaitai, I want to buy**; Lesson 34, item 3: **住みたい sumitai, I want to live in**; Lesson 45, item 1: **開きたい hirakitai, I want to open**).

Now look what happens. Take any of the verbs we have just listed, in low degree form, the form you will find in dictionaries, the most stripped-down form. *To go*, **行く iku**, which we covered in Lesson 43, item 13, and Lesson 46, item 14. *To appear, to go out*, **出る deru**, we saw in Lesson 31, item 1. This form, as you probably noticed long ago, always ends in **u**. And this is, in fact, true of all verbs. For example, *to drink* is **飲む nomu**, *to be understandable* is **わかる wakaru**.

But let's take another look at *to go*, **行く iku**, and *to appear, to go out*, **出る deru**. This is where you get to prove how insightful you are. So take these verbs in middle degree, that is, with the suffix **ます masu**.

出る **deru**

行く **iku**

出ます **demasu**

行きます **ikimasu**

Take a look. The suffix **ます masu** is indeed the same in both cases, but you should be able to discover a difference in how it switches

49 from one form to another. Come on... Take a good look... Almost there... Got it? That's right: for 出る **deru** the **ます masu** replaces the **る ru**: 出る **deru**, 出ます **demasu**. And look at some other forms: 出ない **denai**, *not to go out*, 出なかった **denakatta**, *not to have gone out*, 出たい **detai**, *I want to go out*, and even 出た **deta**, *went out* (cf. Lesson 27, item 13, low degree with the suffix た **ta**, for the past tense, which we will speak about in more detail later). So you understand that for this verb, there is one base, 出 **de**, and all suffixes add on to this root. Not too tough, is it? So there are, then, a group of verbs that work this way, whose most stripped-down form, the form found in dictionaries, necessarily ends in **iru** or **eru**. And for the suffixes to come, **る ru** must go (but be careful, because not all verbs that end in **eru** or **iru** necessarily work this way).

Let's try another verb that "works" this way: *to eat* 食べる **taberu**; the **ru** goes away and leaves the **tabe**; *to eat* (middle degree): 食べます **tabemasu**; *not to eat* (low degree) 食べない **tabenai**, *to have eaten* (low degree) 食べた **tabeta**, *I want to eat* 食べたい **tabetai**.

Or try again with *to look*, 見る **miru**: the **ru** goes away and leaves the **mi**; *to look* (middle degree), 見ます **mimasu**; *not to look* (low degree) 見ない **minai**; *to have looked* 見た **mita**.

It is pretty clear for these verbs, isn't it? No problem. But it is only a bit more complicated with other verbs. Let's go back to *to go*, 行く **iku**: 行く **iku** 行きます **ikimasu**. Here, nothing goes away, but there is a vowel that changes: **iku**, **ikimasu**. The **ik** stays, but between it and the suffixes, there is always a vowel, which changes depending on the suffix. Let's take the forms we know already: *to go* (middle degree), 行きます **ikimasu**; *I want to go*, 行きたい **ikitai**, but *not to go* is 行かない **ikanai**. So that is not too bad, is it? Before the **ます masu** series, and before **たい tai**, it is **i**, but before **ない nai** it is **a**. Sometimes we have to use **o** and **e**, but we don't want to get ahead of ourselves. We decided at the beginning to pace ourselves! Just keep these two here in mind for the moment. And

be observant about the forms we know already. Of course, there are minor exceptions from time to time, but we will talk about those in due time. For example, there are some issues that arise when the suffix you add is the past-tense た *ta* or the て *te*, but we still have 50 more lessons to go! So don't panic!

2. Let's talk a bit about the **high degree**, because we will be using it more and more in the chapters to come. There are two things you should know about the high degree, about how it diverges from the other two degrees. The first we have already mentioned (cf. Lesson 47, note 1): for some of the most common verbs, such as *to go*, *to come*, *to be located*, or *it is*, the high degree is not a form of the verb, but rather a completely different verb altogether.

We have already seen some of this: Lesson 44, items 1 and 9: ございます *de gozaimasu*, *it is*; Lesson 46, item 7 and Lesson 47, item 4: the forms of なさる *nasaru*, which are equivalent to する *suru*, *to do*; Lesson 47, item 2: one form of うかがう *ukagau*, the high degree version of *heard say*; Lesson 47 again, item 11, one of the forms of いらっしゃる *irassharu*, the high form equivalent of 来る *kuru*, *to come*. For the less common verbs, there are a few different ways of forming the high degree, one of which we met in Lesson 47, item 1, note 1.

The second point worth noting is all new, and quite foreign to our English-speaking ears. The middle degree forms do not change based on whether the subject is an "I" or a "you" to whom the "I" is speaking. Look at Lesson 3: question: 食べます か *tabemasu ka*, *do you eat...?*; answer: 食べます *tabemasu*, *I eat*: The same form 食べます *tabemasu* can mean both *I eat* and *you eat*. But this is impossible with the high degree forms. There is one form used with "I", and another form used with "you".

Take a look at Lesson 47. A young man meets a woman at a cocktail party. To tell the truth, he is kind of hitting on her! But with great etiquette, as he would have to in such a situation. To ask if she likes something, he must say: ...お好きですか *o suki desu ka* (cf.

- 49 item 2) (literally, it is "... to be loved of you?"). She replies (item 3): ...好きです **suki desu**, which is the only possible answer: *I like...* For verbs in the high degree, it is the same thing. A form such as お飲みになります **o nomi ni narimasu** (lesson 47, item 1, note 1) can only be used with "you": *you drink*. We found this most in the questions. For the most common verbs, where the high degree uses a different verb, there are specializations, which are in fact two different high degrees, one for "I" and the other for "you". So なさる **nasaru**, *to do* is specialized for "you" (cf. Lesson 46, item 7; Lesson 47, item 4), いらっしゃる **irassharu**, *to come* is specialized for "you" (cf. Lesson 47, item 11).



On the other hand, *de gozaimasu* (cf. Lesson 44, items 1 and 9), means *it is*, but specialized for “I”, which is to say: “(as it concerns **me**) it is”. At any rate, we will always indicate use of the high degree, and we will also note, directly in the word-for-word translation, use of the “specialized” forms for “I” and “you”.

So congratulations! It may have seemed long, but the first volume and passive phase of Japanese with Ease is now done, giving you all the tools you need to tackle the second, active phase, which you can now move on to without delay!



Appendix I

The following pages contain charts of the two syllabic alphabets (kana) in the Japanese language: *Hiragana* and *Katakana*. The official transcription is included with each syllable as a pronunciation guide.

These charts are here to help you, in case you'd like to read the lessons in this volume without consulting the accompanying transcriptions or pronunciation.

But please don't try to write them yet. That will come soon enough, during the active phase (Volume II). You will have all the explanation and guidance you'll need to memorize and write these characters the way the Japanese do.

For now, get your eye used to looking at the kana. **Look at the syllables, learn how to read them.** That's the first step, which is absolutely essential before you can learn to write them.

(Note that the charts are to be read, like all "normal" Japanese texts, from top to bottom and from right to left—nearly exactly the opposite of how we read in English—and following the Japanese "alphabetical" order A, I, U, E, O, KA, KI, KU, KE, KO, etc.).

Appendix II

Index

In the following pages you will find an index where all the words we have studied in this volume are listed with pronunciation and translation. **For each word, a number refers to the first lesson where the word was used. When there is more than one number listed, the supplementary number(s) will indicate any lesson where the word was accompanied by a note.** In this respect, it's like any other index you might find!

But... **you will no doubt be surprised by the order of the index...** at least if you haven't studied the order of the tables in Appendix I. We are of course used to the Latin alphabetical order, A, B, C, D, and so on, which seems only natural (if not universal). **But since we are studying Japanese, let's do what they do!** As you already know, in Japanese there is a different writing system, and a different order of classification to go with it. **The Japanese version of "alphabetical order" is what we find in the kana tables of Appendix I.** The syllables, read from top to bottom and right to left, are put in the order A, I, U, E, O, KA, KI, KU, KE, KO, SA, SHI, SU, SE, SO, etc. This order is used in Japan under all circumstances, whether for dictionaries (which you'll get to later), telephone books, all sorts of index, and any list of words or names. So we should get used to it as soon as possible. However, the order used here is slightly different from the normal Japanese order, as we've tried to make things a bit simpler for you. But we'll take care of that when we go over how to write the kana on our own. That is, in not very much time at all.

aikyō	愛嬌	charm	39
aida	間	interval	37
au	会う	to meet	23
aoi	青い	to be blue (or green)	31
aoyama	青山	AOYAMA (place name)	34
akai	赤い	to be red	31
aki	秋	autumn	48
akita	秋田	AKITA (place name)	37
akirameru	あきらめる	to give up	34
asa	朝	morning	11
asatte	あさって	the day after tomorrow	43
asahi	朝日	sunrise	30
ashi	足	foot, leg.	40
ashiotō	足音	sound of footsteps	48
ashita	明日	tomorrow	2
asoko	あそこ	over there	1
asobu	遊ぶ	to play	45
azukeru	預ける	to deposit, entrust	45
atashi	あたし	me, I (female speaker)	29
ataakai	温かい	to be warm	41
atari	辺り	surroundings	32
atsui	暑い	to be very hot	1
atsumaru	集まる	to gather	47
ato	後	after	45
anata	あなた	you	29
ani	兄	my older brother	27
ane	姉	my older sister	31
afurika	アフリカ	AFRICA	39
apāto	アパート	apartment	24
amarinimo	あまりにも	too (much)	48
ame	雨	rain	31
amerika	アメリカ	America, U.S.A.	8
arawasu	表す	to express	36
arigatō	ありがとう	Thank you!	9, 18
(gozaimasu)	(ございます)		
aru	ある	to exist (for inanimate beings) .4, 35	
aru (+ noun)	ある	a certain	37
aruku	歩く	to walk	6
aruzenchin	アルゼンチン	ARGENTINA	41
anshin	安心	peace of mind	23

anzen	安全	security, safety	43
annai (suru)	案内	to guide	40

i	胃	stomach	46
ii	いい	to be good	2
iiie	いいえ	No!	9
iu	言う	to say, to be called	33
ie	家	house, home	34
ikaiyō	胃潰瘍	stomach ulcer	46
ikaga	いかが	how?	16
iku	行く	to go	1
ikutsu	いくつ	how many?	15
ikura	いくら	how much? (<i>price</i>)	17
ikebana	生け花	flower arrangement	34
igirisu	イギリス	ENGLAND	22
isha	医者	doctor	46
issho ni	一緒に	together	5
isogashii	いそがしい	to be busy	41
isogu	急ぐ	to be in a hurry	32
- ijō	…以上	more than	39
itai	痛い	to be painful	46
ichi	一	one	11
ichinichi	一日	one day	39
ichinichijū	一日中	all day long	30
itsu	いつ	when?	12
itsumo	いつも	always	32
inaka	田舎	countryside	36
inu	犬	dog	33
inochi	命	life	48
ihan	違反(違犯)	violation, infraction	32
ima	今	now	12
imi	意味	meaning	36
imōto	妹	my younger sister	39
irassharu	いらっしゃる	to come, to go, to be (<i>high degree, YOU</i>)	12, 18, 47
iru	いる	to exist (<i>for animate beings</i>)	15, 35
ireru	入れる	to put	1, 47
iro	色	color	30
iwai	祝い	celebration	46

iwashigumo	いわし雲	cirrus clouds	48
indo	インド	INDIA.	39

ue	上	upper part, top.	23
ucno	上野	UENO (<i>place name</i>)	39
ukagau	うかがう	to visit, to ask (<i>high degree, I</i>)	47
ukabu	浮かぶ	to float.	48
ugokasu	動かす	to move (something).	40
ushiro	後ろ	behind.	22
uta	歌	song, poem	19
utau	歌う	to sing.	19
uchū	宇宙	universe.	43
utsukushii	美しい	to be beautiful.	19
umareru	生まれる	to be born	38
umi	海	sea.	30
ura	裏	reverse, back-side.	17
urayamashii	うらやましい	to be jealous	30
uru	売る	to sell	48
urusai	うるさい	to be annoying	24

e	へ	[destination]	1, 7
ea.tāminaru	エア・ターミナル	airport terminal.	27
eiga	映画	the movies.	8
ee	ええ	Yes (<i>informal</i>).	12
eki	駅	station	6
esu.efu	S. F.	Science Fiction	43
eda	枝	branch.	39
edo	江戸	EDO (<i>place name</i>)	17
enoshima	江の島	ENOSHIMA (<i>place name</i>)	16
ehagaki	絵葉書	post card	39
en	円	yen	17
ensō	演奏	performance, recital	29

o	を	[object]	2, 7
oikosu	追い越す	to overtake	32
oishii	おいしい	to taste good	9

ooi	多い	to be many, to be numerous . . .	34
ookii	大きい	to be big, tall	20
ooshima	大島	OOSHIMA (<i>place name</i>)	30
ooyorokobi	大喜び	great joy	39
o kake kudasai	おかけください	please sit down	46
o kage sama de	おかげさまで	thanks to you.	23
o kashi	お菓子	cake.	12
o ki no doku ni	お気の毒に	That's so annoying!	23
okiru	起きる	to get up	11
oku	置く	to set, put	40
okuru	送る	to send off, send	33
okoru	起こる	to happen	43
oshieru	教える	to teach	29
osu	押す	to push, to press	46
ōsutoraria	オーストラリア	AUSTRALIA	38
osoi	遅い	to be late	11
oji	伯父	my uncle	31
ojiisan	お祖父さん	grandfather	39
ojōsan	お嬢さん	your daughter	15
ochiru	落ちる	to fall.	48
oto	音	noise, sound	24
otoko no ko	男の子	boy	15
ototoi	おととい	the day before yesterday.	39
otona	大人	adult	44
o tomo suru	お供する	to accompany (<i>high degree, I</i>)	26
odoroku	驚く	to be surprised.	39
onaji	同じ	same	36
o negai	おねがい	Please!.	9, 16
shimasu	します		
o hayō	おはよう	Good morning!	3
gozaimasu	ございます		
o hisashiburi	お久しぶり	it's a long time since I saw	
desu	です	you last!	30
obaasan	お祖母さん	grandmother	39
ōboe	オーボエ	oboe	47
oboeru	覚える	to remember	36
obotchan	お坊ちゃん	your little son	15
opera	オペラ	opera.	41
omedetō	おめでとう	Congratulations!	23
gozaimasu	ございます		

omo ni	主に	mainly	40
omou	思う	to think	25
omoshiroi	おもしろい	to be interesting	6
oyogu	泳ぐ	to swim	30
ori	檻	cage	39
owari	終わり	end	48
owaru	終わる	to end, to finish	48
ongaku	音楽	music	47
ongakkai	音楽会	concert	29
onna	女	woman	41
onnna no ko	女の子	little girl	15

ka	か	[question]	2
kai	階	floor, storey	24
kaigan	海岸	seashore	30
kaisha	会社	company, firm	23
kainushi	飼い主	master (of an animal)	37
kaimono	買物	shopping	5
kairui	貝類	shellfish	30
kau	買う	to buy	5
kau	飼う	to breed (animals)	33
kaeru	帰る	to return home	31, 35
kakaru	かかる	to be hung up, to hang	31
kakaru	かかる	to take (time)	32
kaki	柿	persimmon/kaki tree	48
kaku	書く	to write, draw	17
kakushū	隔週	every other week	47
kakuteru.pātī	カクテル・パーティー	cocktail party	47
kakeru	かける	to telephone	16
(denwa o)	(電話を)		
kagayaku	輝く	to sparkle	48
kasa	傘	umbrella	31
kashu	歌手	singer	19
kasu	貸す	to lend	32
kasetto	カセット	cassette tape	47
kata	方	person (high degree)	48
katsudō	活動	activity	47
kanai	家内	my wife	18
kanashii	悲しい	to be sad	43

kanata	彼方	far away	43
kanada	カナダ	CANADA	45
kanarazu	必ず	certainly	27
kanarazushimo	必ずしも	not necessarily	36
(+ negative)			
kane	金	money	31
kaban	鞆	bag	31
kabuki	歌舞伎	kabuki, traditional play	29
kamera	カメラ	camera	4
kayōbi	火曜日	Tuesday	29
kara (after noun)	から	from	6, 7
kara (after verb)	から	because	24, 31
karappo	かつぽ	completely empty (<i>informal</i>)	45
karcha	彼は	dead leaves	48
kawa	側	side	20
kawa	川	river	36
kawaii	かわい	to be pretty	33
kawari	代わり	replacement	39
kawaru	変わる	to change	41
kangae	考え	idea	16
kankei	関係	relationship	23
kankō	観光	sightseeing	26
kansai	関西	KANSAI (<i>place name</i>)	32
kanshin	感心	admiration	33
kantan	簡単	simple/easy	18

ki	木	tree	39
ki o tsukeru	気をつける	pay attention	40
ki ga suru	気がする	to feel like doing smthg.	43
ki ni iru	気に入る	to please	24
kikai	機会	opportunity	19
kikkake	きっかけ	opportunity, chance	47
kiku	聞く	to listen, to ask	29, 42
kikoeru	聞こえる	to be audible	24
kikoku	帰国	return to one's country	45
kissaten	喫茶店	café, coffee shop	12
kisha	汽車	long distance train	32
kisetsu	季節	season	39
kitto	きっと	certainly	39
kinō	昨日	yesterday	8

kippu	切符	ticket	29
kimaru	決まる	to be decided.	27
kimochi	気持	feeling	48
kyaku	客	customer, guest	34
kyō	今日	today	11
kyokashō	許可証	license, permit.	38
kyōmi	興味	interest, curiosity	43
kirin	きりん	giraffe	39
kirei	きれい	beautiful	30
kiro	キロ	kilometer	32
kin.en	禁煙	non-smoking	20



kūkō	空港	airport	27
kuge	公家	Court noble	36
kutsushita	靴下	sock	5
...kudasai	…下さい	... please (give me).	9
kudasaru	下さる	to do for me (<i>high degree, YOU</i>)	45
kuni	国	country	38
kubi	首	neck	39
kuma	熊	bear	39
kumitateru	組み立てる	to build, to assemble	40
kurai	くらい	around, about	25
kurashikku	クラシック	classical	47
kurabu	クラブ	club	38
kuru	来る	to come	8
kuruma	車	car	34
kureru	くれる	to do for me	29



kekkō	けっこう	perfect	4, 12
kekkon	結婚	marriage	15
kesa	今朝	this morning	13
kedo	けど	<i>informal for keredomo</i>	44
keredo	けれど	<i>informal for keredomo</i>	45
keredomo	けれども	even though	24
... ken	…軒	<i>measure word for houses</i>	34
<i>(after number)</i>			
kengaku	見学	field trip	40

koi	恋	love	43
kōin	工員	worker, employee	40
kokuseki	国籍	nationality	38
kokudō	国道	national highway	32
kōkūbin	航空便	airmail	22
koko	ここ	here	5
kōsui	香水	perfume	31
kōsokudōro	高速道路	freeway	32
kōza	口座	bank account	45
kōjō	工場	factory	40
kotaeru	答える	to answer	39
kochira	こちら	this way (this direction)	40
kōtsū	交通	traffic	23
koto	こと	fact, event	32, 42
kōtōgakkō	高等学校	high school	47
kotoshi	今年	this year	23
kotoba	言葉	word	1
kotowaru	断る	to refuse	41
kodomo	子供	child	15
kono	この	this (+ <i>noun</i>)	18
kono aida	この間	recently	31
konogoro	このごろ	nowadays	46
kōhī	コーヒー	coffee	3
komaru	こまる	to be in trouble	13
komu	混む	to be crowded	32
komugi	小麦	wheat	30
kore	これ	this	17
korekara	これから	from now on	40
kowai	こわい	to be scared/scary	39
konsāto	コンサート	concert	19
kondo	今度	this time	19
konna	こんな	of this kind	45
konna ni	こんなに	so, like this	39
konnichi wa	こんにちわ	Hello!	12
konban	今晚	tonight	9
konpyūta	コンピュータ	computer	40

ga (<i>after noun</i>) が	[subject]	4, 7
ga (<i>after verb</i>) が	but	19

gaikukojin	外国人	foreigner	45
gaun	ガウン	robe, gown	31
gakki	楽器	musical instrument	47
...gatera	…がてら	while	31
garēji	ガレージ	garage	34

girisha	ギリシャ	GREECE	22
ginkō	銀行	bank	31

gurai	ぐらい	cf. kurai	
-------	-----	-----------	--

...getsu	月	month	34
getsuyōbi	月曜日	Monday	26
genki	元気	good health	23
genjitsuteki	現実的	realistic	48

go	五	five	15
...go	語	<i>language of the country</i>	26
(after name of country)			
...go	後	after	31
(after time)			
gogatsu	五月	May	23
gogo	午後	afternoon	11
gozen	午前	morning	27
gochisō	ごちそう	good cheer	41
gomen nasai	ごめんなさい	Excuse me!	17

...sai	…歳	...years old	15
(after number)			
saikin	最近	recently	47
saikon (suru)	再婚する	to remarry	15
saigo	最後	last	43
saisho	最初	first	32
saifu	財布	wallet	45
sakana	魚	fish	9
sakkyokuka	作曲家	composer	41

sake	酒	alcohol, sake	4
sagasu	探す	to look for	34
sasou	誘う	to invite	16
sabishii	寂しい	to be lonely	48
...sama	…さま	<i>after someone's name (high degree)</i>	44
saraishū	再来週	the week after next	46
saru	猿	monkey	39
san	三	three	11
...san	…さん	<i>after someone's name</i>	12, 16, 19
sandouitchi	サンドイッチ	sandwich	16
sanpo	散歩	walk	31

shi	詩	poem	48
shiasatte	しあさって	two days after tomorrow	27
shīzun	シーズン	season	10
shika (+ neg.)	しか	only	30
shikashi	しかし	but, however	26
shikata ga nai	仕方がない	can do nothing about it	44
shikikin	敷金	(security) deposit	34
shigatsu	四月	April	23
shigoto	仕事	work	23
shizuoka	静岡	SHIZUOKA (<i>place name</i>)	32
shizen	自然	nature	36
shita	舌	tongue	46
shichi	七	seven	27
shitsugyōsha	失業者	the unemployed	40
shitsumon	質問	question	40
shinu	死ぬ	to die	37
shibai	芝居	theatre, play	29
shibuya	渋谷	SHIBUYA (<i>place name</i>)	6
shima	島	island	30
shimau	しまう	to finish, to complete	31
shashin	写真	photograph	19
shanpen	シャンペン	champagne	47
shūkan	週間	week	46
shujin	主人	my husband	31
shujinkō	主人公	hero (<i>of a novel</i>)	25
shuppatsu	出発	departure	32
shuppan	出版	publication	25
shūmatsu	週末	weekend	32

shumi	趣味	personal taste	47
shōkai	紹介	introduction.	15
shokugyō	職業	profession	38
shokugo	食後	after meal	41
shokuji	食事	meal	26
shokuhin	食品	food.	48
shōgo	正午	noon	44
shōshō	しょうしょう	a little bit.	18
shōshin	昇進	promotion	46
shōsetsu	小説	novel	25
shōbai	商売	business, trade.	48
shiyōryō	使用料	tax	45
shorui	書類	forms, document	38
shiraberu	調べる	to examine, to investigate	22
shiru	知る	to know	6
shiroi	白い	to be white	31
shiwa	しわ	wrinkle	39
shinseki	親戚	relatives.	36
shinsen	新鮮	fresh	30
shinpai	心配	worry.	27
shinryaku	侵略	invasion.	43



suizokukan	水族館	aquarium	6
suiheisen	水平線	horizon over the sea	30
suiyōbi	水曜日	Wednesday	46
suiiri shōsetsu	推理小説	crime fiction/detective story	25
suu	吸う	to breath	20
suki	好き	to be liked	10
sukoshi	少し	a bit.	26
sugiru	過ぎる	to exceed, to pass	48
sugu	すぐ	immediately	16
sugoi	すごい	to be extraordinary	32
sushi	寿司	sushi (<i>Japanese cuisine</i>).	16
susumu	進む	to advance, to proceed	32
susumeru	すすめる	to advise, to recommend.	18
subarashii	すばらしい	to be wonderful.	30
supai	スパイ	spy.	25
supīdo	スピード	speed.	32
sūpu	スープ	soup.	9
supein	スペイン	SPAIN.	38

sumimasen	すみません	Excuse me!	40
sumu	住む	to live in	15
sumō	相撲	sumō (<i>sport</i>)	10
suru	する	to do	8, 20, 42

seigen	制限	restriction, limit	32
seizō	製造	manufacture	40
seihin	製品	product	40
setsumei	説明	explanation	38
setonaikai	瀬戸内海	SETONAIKAI (the Inland Sea)	30
semai	狭い	to be narrow, to be small.	24
sen	千	thousand	17
senshū	先週	last week	29
sensei	先生	teacher.	33
sensō	戦争	war	18

sō	そう	so.	1
soko	そこ	there	6
sōko	倉庫	warehouse.	40
soshite	そして	and, then	30
sotsugyō	卒業	graduation, diploma	23
sono	その	that (+ <i>noun</i>).	17
sono uchi ni	そのうちに	right after	23
sonogo	その後	then, afterwards	23
sono mama	そのまま	just as it is.	32
sora	空	sky.	48
sore	それ	that	4
sorekara	それから	then, afterwards	6
soretomo	それとも	or else	29
soredewa	それでわ	Well!	3
soredemo	それでも	nevertheless	11
sorenara	それなら	if so, then	11
sore ni	それに	furthermore.	26
sorehodo	それほど	at this point	24
sorosoro	そろそろ	slowly, gradually.	48
sonna ni	そんなに	such, so.	20

zannen ざんねん too bad19

...ji …時 (*number +*) o'clock.....11

jikan 時間 hour.....13

jiko 事故 accident, incident23

jitsu wa 実は really/actually.....15

jidai 時代 age, period17

jidōsha 自動車 automobile, car.....23

jibun 自分 oneself.....18

jimusho 事務所 office.....40

jazu ジャズ jazz.....19

jū 十 ten.....11

jūsho 住所 address38

jūsu ジュース juice16

...jō …畳 *measure word for tatamis*.....34

joyū 女優 actress.....19

...jin (*after*
country name) …人
..... *national of this country* ..13, 28

jinto じんと strong and deep (*pain*)46

zuibun 随分 very, extremely13

...zutsu …ずつ each.....39

zeikan 税関 customs.....4

zēhi 是非 absolutely, without fail19

zenzen (+ *neg.*) 全然 not at all, absolutely not24

zenbu 全部 entirely, wholly.....31

zō 像 elephant.....39

ta 田 rice field36

taiin (*suru*) 退院(する) to leave hospital23

taizai 滞在 stay38

taihen 大変 very/greatly.....11

taiyō 太陽 sun.....30

taoru	タオル	towel	31
takai	高い	to be high, to be expensive	5
takusan	たくさん	many	6
tasukaru	たすかる	to be saved	20
tatsu	経つ	to pass, to go by (<i>time</i>)	46
tatsu	立つ	to stand	24
tatemono	建物	building	40
tateru	建てる	to build, to construct	37
tatoeba	たとえば	for example	36
tada	ただ	ordinary, common	46
tanoshii	楽しい	to be pleasant	39
tanoshimi ni suru	楽しみにする	to be delighted	41
tanomu	頼む	to request	29
tabako	タバコ	cigarette	20
tabakoya	タバコ屋	tobacco dealer's	20
tabitabi	度々	often	45
tabesugi	食べすぎ	overeat	46
tabemono	食べ物	food	46
taberu	食べる	to eat	3
tamago	卵	egg	3
tame (<i>after noun</i>)	ため	for, on account of	16
tame (<i>after verb</i>)	ため	to, in order to	38
tameiki	溜息	sigh	48
tariru	足りる	to be enough, to suffice	32
tawā	タワー	tower	6
tanjōbi	誕生日	birthday	29

chiisai	小さい	to be small	27
chekku.in	チェック・イン	check-in	44
chikai	近い	to be near/close	6
chikatetsu	地下鉄	subway	31
chikyū	地球	the Earth	43
cha	茶	tea	34
chawan	茶碗	teacup	17
...chan	…ちゃん	<i>after someone's name</i> <i>(very informal)</i>	39
chūkaryōri	中華料理	Chinese food	9
chūgoku	中国	CHINA	29

chōshi	調子	tone, style	41
chōshoku	朝食	breakfast	3
chotto	ちょっと	a bit	17
chōdo	ちょうど	just, exactly	24
chiryō	治療	medical care	46

tsukau	使う	to use	31
tsukaeru	仕える	to serve, to attend	37
tsukamaru	捉まる	to trap, to seize	32
tsuki	月	moon	43
tsuku	着く	to arrive at	5
tsuku	つく	to stick	31
tsukuru	作る	to make, to produce	18
tsukeppanashi	つけっぱなし	working, on (<i>radio</i>)	47
tsukeru	つける	to attach	36
tsugi	次	following, next	19
tsugō	都合	circumstances	19
tsuzuki	続き	the following	37
tsuzuku	続く	to continue, to last	20
tsutome	勤め	work, employment	23
tsutomeru	勤める	to work, to be employed	23
tsuma	妻	my wife	34
tsumori	つもり	intention	25
tsuyoi	強い	to be hard, to be bitter	30
tsurai	つらい	to be annoying	20
tsuru	釣る	to fish	30
tsureru	連れる	to accompany, to go with	26

tegami	手紙	letter	39
tekikoku	敵国	enemy country	43
tenisu	テニス	tennis	38
terebi	テレビ	television	10
...ten	…展	exhibition	2
ten	点	point, dot	43
tenki	天気	weather	16
tenpura	てんぷら	tempura (<i>Japanese cuisine</i>)	29

to	と	and (<i>between two nouns</i>)	4
to	と	[quotation]	15, 36, 37

to (<i>after verb</i>)	と	when, if.	46
...tō	頭	<i>measure word for large animals</i>	39
tooi	遠い	to be far.	20
toki	時	time	32
tokidoki	時々	sometimes.	10
tōkyō	東京	TŌKYŌ.	6
toku ni	特に	especially	47
tokoro	所	place, spot.	27
totemo	とても	very.	9
tōdai	東大	Tōkyō University	23
tonari	隣	neighbor	20
tobiutsuru	飛び移る	to jump	39
tobitatsu	飛び立つ	to fly away	43
tomodachi	友達	friend.	8
torakku	トラック	truck, lorry	32
toranku	トランク	trunk, suitcase.	4
toru	取る	to take.	9

dai (+ *number*) 第

...dai	…台	(<i>number</i>)st, (<i>number</i>)nd, (<i>number</i>)rd, (<i>number</i>)th.	1
daietto	ダイエット	<i>measure word for vehicles</i>	34
daigaku	大学	diet	12
daisuki	大好き	university	23
daijōbu	大丈夫	to be liked very much.	9
daidokoro	台所	all right, no problem.	27
dainingu	ダイニング	kitchen	34
dakara	だから	dining room	34
dake	だけ	that's why	34
dasu	出す	only.	4
datte	だって	to bring out	46
...darake	…だらけ	[quotation] (<i>informal</i>).	44
dare	だれ	full of	39
daremo (+ <i>neg.</i>)	だれも	who?	19
dandan	段々	nobody	30
		gradually.	36

de	で	[means], [place]	6, 14
dekiagaru	できあがる	to be finished.	40
dekiru	できる	to be possible	13, 42

de gozaimasu	でございます	it is (<i>high degree, I</i>)	44
desukara	ですから	because of this	30
depāto	デパート	department store	5
demo	でも	but	5
deru	出る	to go out, to leave	27
dewa	では	so, well	17
denki	電気	electricity	40
densha	電車	suburban rail	6, 32
denwa	電話	telephone	13
denwachō	電話帳	telephone book	36

dō	どう	how?	6
doko	どこ	where?	1
dokoka	どこか	somewhere	29
dōshite	どうして	why? how?	36
dōzo	どうぞ	Please!	9
dōzō	銅像	bronze statue	33
dochira	どちら	which one of the two?	10
dotchi	どっち	which one of the two?	29
donogurai	どのぐらい	about how much?	25
dōbutsuen	動物園	zoo	39
dōmo (arigatō)	どうも(ありがとう)	Thanks!	17
doyōbi	土曜日	Saturday	19
dōryō	同僚	colleague	32
donna	どんな	of what kind?	19

na	な	[reflection]	19
naiyō	内容	contents	43
naoru	直る	to heal, to recover	46
naka	中	inside, interior	4
nagai	長い	to be long	25
nakanaka	なかなか	quite	47
nakama	仲間	friend(s), fellow	47
nagame	眺め	view, scene	24
naku	泣く	to cry, to weep	39
nakunaru	なくなる	to die, to pass away	37
nasaru	なさる	to do (<i>high degree, YOU</i>)	46
naze	なぜ	why?	33

natsu	夏	summer	30
...nado	…など	that kind of object	33, 36
<i>(after noun)</i>			
namae	名前	someone's name	36
nara <i>(after noun)</i>	なら	if it is.	29
narabu	並ぶ	to line, to queue	39
narita	成田	NARITA <i>(place name)</i>	27
naru	なる	to become	22
nan/nani	何	what?	2
nanika	何か	something	34
nanimo (+ neg.)	何も	nothing	24
nante	なんて	so-called	43

ni	に	[place], [goal], [adverbial] . . .	4, 14
ni	に	[addition]	16
ni	に	[agent]	35
ni	二	two	24
niku	肉	meat	9
nikkō	日航	Japan Air Lines	27
nishi	西	west.	30
nitchū	日中	daytime/day	30
nichiyōbi	日曜日	Sunday	16
nihon	日本	JAPAN	18
nimotsu	荷物	baggage, luggage	27
nyūin (suru)	入院 (する)	to be in hospital	23
nyūgaku (suru)	入学 (する)	to enter school.	38
nyūkyo (suru)	入居 (する)	to move in (<i>to a new house</i>) . . .	34
nyūsu	ニュース	news	10
niru	似る	to resemble, to look like	39
niwa	庭	garden, yard	34
...nin	…人	<i>measure word for people</i>	47

ne	ね	[agreement]	1
negai	願い	request.	45
nemui	眠い	to be sleepy.	39
neru	寝る	to go to bed.	11
...nen	…年	year	15
...nenkan	…年間	year (<i>duration</i>)	37
nendai	年代	period, era	40

no	の	[relation]	4
no	の	[question]	29
no	の	[replacement]	38
no	の	the fact of	47
nokoru	残る	to stay	45
node	ので	because, given that	31, 33
noni	のに	even though	41
nomi no ichi	のみの市	flea market	17
nomu	飲む	to drink	3
noru	乗る	to get in (<i>to a vehicle</i>).	31

ha	葉	leaf	48
hai	はい	Yes!	4
...hai	…杯	<i>measure word for full cups/glasses.</i>	37
hairu	入る	to come in, to enter	5
hakanai	はかない	to be empty, to be vain	48
hako	箱	box	17
hakozaki	箱崎	HAKOZAKI (<i>place name</i>).	27
hagaki	葉書	post card	22
hashi	箸	chopsticks	9
hashiru	走る	to run, to go (<i>for vehicles</i>)	32
hajimete	初めて	for the first time	39
hajimeru	始める	to begin, to open	47
hataraku	働く	to work	11
hachi	八	eight	32
hatsuon	発音	pronunciation	35
hate	果て	end	43
hanashi	話	story	25
hanasu	話す	to speak, to talk	33
hanareru	離れる	to be distant	44
happi.endo	ハッピー・エンド	happy ending	43
hayai	早い	to be early	27
hayaku	早く	fast	1
harau	払う	to pay	32
haru	春	spring	26
...han	…半	and a half	30

hi	日	sun, day.	30
hikaeru	控える	to hold back	46
hikari	光	light.	30
hikōki	飛行機	plane	27
hikōjō	飛行場	airport	27
higure	日暮れ	sunset	48
hitsuyō	必要	necessary.	34
hito	人	person	19
hitobito	人々	people	37
hitori	一人	one person.	44
hitori de	一人で	alone, by oneself.	47
hidari	左	left.	17
hima	暇	free time	26
hyaku	百	hundred.	22
hiraku	開く	to open	45
hirune	昼寝	nap	30
hīrō	ヒーロー	hero.	43

fū	風	style, manner.	48
fashon.moderu	ファッション・モデル	fashion model	25
fueru	増える	to increase.	45
fōku	フォーク	fork	9
fuku	吹く	to blow	47
futatsu	二つ	two (<i>objects</i>).	27
futari	二人	two persons.	15
fuchi	縁	edge.	31
futsū	普通	usual	45
futsuka	二日	two days	45
fudōsanya	不動産屋	real estate agency	34
fuyu	冬	winter	45
furansu	フランス	FRANCE	13
furu	降る	to fall (<i>rain, snow...</i>).	31
furui	古い	to be old	17
furoa	フロア	floor, storey.	44
fun	分	minute.	24

heimin	平民	the people, the common people .36
heiwa	平和	peace18
heya	部屋	room44
hen	辺	surroundings20

hō	方	direction, way32
hoeru	吠える	to bark39
hoka	他	other41
hoshi	星	star43
hoshii	ほしい	to be wanted34
hoteru	ホテル	hotel44
hotondo	ほとんど	almost all36
hōmu.dorama	ホーム・ドラマ	"home drama" television series .10
hon	本	book4
hontō	本当	true, real19
honya	本屋	bookstore18

bā	バー	bar11
bakkin	罰金	fine, penalty32
bāgen	バーゲン	sale31
baggu	バッグ	bag27
basu	バス	bus6
ban	晩	evening26

bioron	ビオロン	violin (<i>old</i>)48
byōin	病院	hospital46
byōki	病気	illness, disease41
biru	ビル	building24, 32
bīru	ビール	beer3
...bin	…便	<i>flight number</i>27

(after number)

buke	武家	warrior36
bun	分	part34

beddo	ベッド	bed	46
benri	便利	convenient.	24

boku	僕	me, I (<i>male speaker</i>)	20
bōken	冒険	adventure	43

pato.kā	パトカー	patrol car.	32
pan	パン	bread	3
panda	パンダ	panda.	39

piano	ピアノ	piano	29
pikunikku	ピクニック	picnic	16
pīnattsu	ピーナッツ	peanuts	39

pea	ペア	pair	31
pēji	ページ	page.	25

...mai	…枚	<i>measure word for flat objects</i> . . .	22
maiasa	毎朝	every morning.	30
maido	毎度	(thank you) for each time	18
(arigatō gozaimasu)	(ありがとう ございます)		
mainichi	毎日	every day	37
mae	前	before, in front	13, 15
magaru	曲がる	to turn	20
mājan	マーじゃん	mahjong (<i>Chinese game</i>)	41
massugu	まっすぐ	straight ahead	20
mazu	先ず	firstly.	6
mata	また	or, again	9
mattaku	全く	completely, quite.	48
matsu	待つ	to wait.	13
mada (+ neg.)	まだ	not yet	2
made	まで	until.	6, 7
mamoru	守る	to guard, to keep.	43
man	万	ten thousand	17

mieru	見える	to be visible.	8
mikka	三日	three days	20
mikan	みかん	tangerine, mandarin	16
migi	右	right.	17
mise	店	store, shop.	6, 19
miseru	見せる	to show	17
mizu	水	cold water	31
...mitai	…みたい	seems, looks like.	48
michi	道	road, street, way	20
mitsukaru	みつかる	to be found	24
mitsukoshi	三越	MITSUKOSHI (<i>Japanese department store</i>)	31
mina/minna	皆	all	36
mimi	耳	ear.	39
miyage	みやげ	gift, souvenir.	6
myōji	苗字	family name	36
miru	見る	to look, to see	2

mukai	向かい	opposite, across.	24
mukaeru	迎える	to meet, to welcome	27
mukashi	昔	a long time ago	36
mukō	向こう	on the other side, opposite	39
mushamusha	むしやむしや	munching (<i>sound</i>).	39
musuko	息子	my son	26
musuko san	息子さん	your son	23
muzukashii	むずかしい	to be difficult.	32
munashii	空しい	to be vain	48
mura	村	village.	30
muri	無理	unreasonable, excessive	19

...me	…目	...th, ...nd.	31
me	目	eye.	39
...mei	…名	<i>measure word for persons (official)</i>	44
meibutsu	名物	specialty	30
megane	眼鏡	eyeglasses.	8
meguro	目黒	MEGURO (<i>place name</i>).	6
mezurashii	めずらしい	to be rare.	41

mo	も	also, too.	6
mō	もう	already	25
mokuyōbi	木曜日	Thursday	39
moshimoshi	もしもし	Hello!	27
mōsu	もうす	to say, to be called (<i>high degree</i> , I) .	15
motsu	持つ	to hold, to have	4
moto	元	basis, origin.	40
motto	もっと	more	19
modoru	戻る	to retrace one's steps.	32, 35
mono	物	thing, object	17
monogatari	物語	story, tale.	43
moppara	もっぱら	mainly.	47
morau	もらう	to receive, to get	31
mondai	問題	question, problem.	46

yakusoku	約束	promise, appointment.	13
yakeru	焼ける	to burn.	30
yasui	安い	to be cheap	31
yasumi	休み	vacation, rest, holiday.	30
yasumu	休む	to rest	46
yachin	家賃	rent	24
yatto	やっと	at last.	24
yama	山	mountain.	36
yameru	やめる	to stop, to give up.	5
yaru	やる	to do (<i>informal</i>).	17

yūgata	夕方	evening	33
yukkuri	ゆっくり	slowly	39
yūbin	郵便	mail, post	22
yūbinkyoku	郵便局	post office	22
yūmei	有名	famous	37
yūyake	夕焼	evening glow	48
yūryō	有料	not for free	32

yo	よ	[engagement]	2
yo	世	world.	48
yō	よう	way, manner	48

yoku	よく	well	8
yoku	よく	often	10
yokujitsu	翌日	the next day.	45
yoko	横	side	31
yō koso	ようこそ	いらっしゃいました	
irasshaimashita		Welcome!	40
yosan	予算	budget	32
yōchien	幼稚園	kindergarten	24
yotei	予定	plan, schedule	45
yonaka	夜中	night, nighttime.	11
yōfuku	洋服	clothes.	4
yopparau	酔っ払う	to get drunk	48
yoyaku	予約	reservation	44
yorī	より	more (+ <i>adj.</i>) than.	19
yoru	よる	to drop in/by	31
yoru	夜	night, evening.	11
yoroshii	よろしい	to be good (<i>high degree</i> , YOU)	23
yon/yo	四	four	24, 46

raion	ライオン	lion	39
raigetsu	来月	next month	44
raishū	来週	next week	23
rainen	来年	next year	26
rakuda	らくだ	camel.	39
rajio	ラジオ	radio	47

rishi	利子	capital interest.	45
ribingu	リビング	living room	34
rimujin.basu	リムジン・バス	limousine bus	27
ryōkin	料金	price	22
ryokō	旅行	travel, journey.	31
ryōshin	両親	both parents, mother and father	39

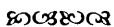
ryōri	料理	cooking, food	9
ringo	りんご	apple	3

rusu	留守	absence	18
------	----	-------------------	----

reikin	礼金	reward	34
reitō	冷凍	freezing	48
rekōdo	レコード	record	47
resutoran	レストラン	restaurant	46
renshū	練習	practice, exercise	1, 47

roku	六	six	30
roketto	ロケット	rocket	43
robotto	ロボット	robot	40
romantikku	ロマンチック	romantic	48

wa	は	[emphasis].	11
wa	は	[announce]	15
wa	わ	[softener].	27
wakaru	わかる	to be understandable, to be known .	1
wakareru	別かれる	to be separated	34
wakusei	惑星	planet	43
wake	わけ	reason, cause.	36
washitsu	和室	Japanese-style room	34
wasureru	忘れる	to forget.	8
watakushi.	私	me, I	9, 12
watashi			
watakushidomo	私共	us, we (<i>official</i>).	40
watashitachi	私達	us, we	39
wataru	渡る	to cross	36
warui	悪い	to be bad	19
warumono	悪者	bad guy	43





A series of horizontal dotted lines for handwriting practice, starting from the pen nib icon and extending across the page.



A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing practice, starting from the pen nib and extending across the page.



A series of horizontal dotted lines for handwriting practice, starting from the pen tip and extending across the page.





A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing practice, starting from the pen nib and extending across the page.



A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing practice, starting from the pen tip and extending across the page.



Aubin Imprimeur

LIGUGÉ, POITIERS

Achevé d'imprimer en février 2007
N° d'édition 2532 / N° d'impression P 70703
Dépôt légal, février 2007
Imprimé en France

Reliure BRUN à Malesherbes